

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 812SH/813SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual was created exclusively for SoftBank 812SH and 813SH handsets sold in Japan.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 812SH and 813SH are compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorisation is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see **P.20-29**) about unclear or missing information.

Symbols & Illustrations

In this manual, most operations are described with SoftBank 812SH open (see **P.1-11**) in Standby. Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

SoftBank 813SH users, please note that SoftBank 813SH is not equipped with mobile camera. See **SoftBank 813SH Supplementary Guide** for operational and functional differences with SoftBank 812SH.

812SH-813SH Comparison

Functions

These functions are not available on SoftBank 813SH:

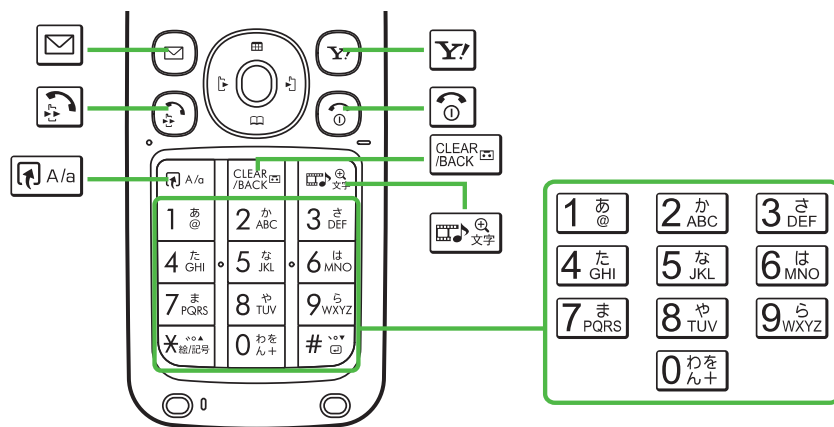
■ Video Call ■ Camera ■ Face Recognition ■ Scan Barcode ■ Create QR Code ■ Text Scanner

Main Menu

SoftBank 812SH		SoftBank 813SH
Communication		Communication
Yahoo! Keitai		Yahoo! Keitai
Media Player		Media Player
Messaging		Messaging
Camera		Data Folder
Data Folder		PIM
Tools		Tools
Entertainment		Entertainment
S! Appli		S! Appli
Lifestyle-appli		Lifestyle-appli
Phone		Phone
Settings		Settings

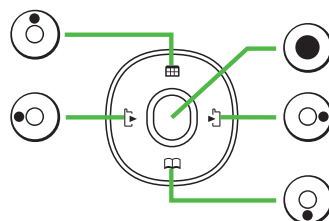
Keypad Keys

Indicated in this manual as shown below.



Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc. In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

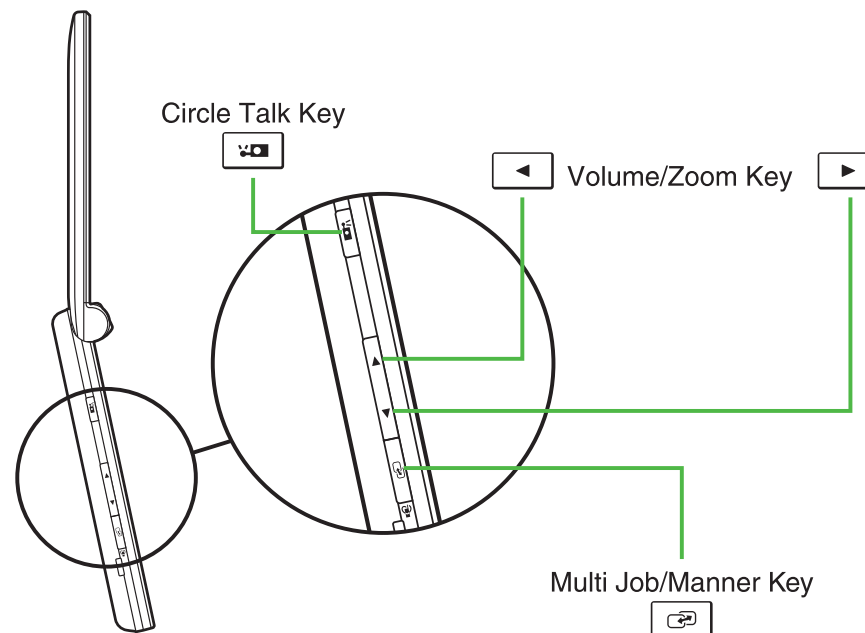


Basic Multi Selector Operations

- : Press  or 
- : Press  or 
- : Press , ,  or 

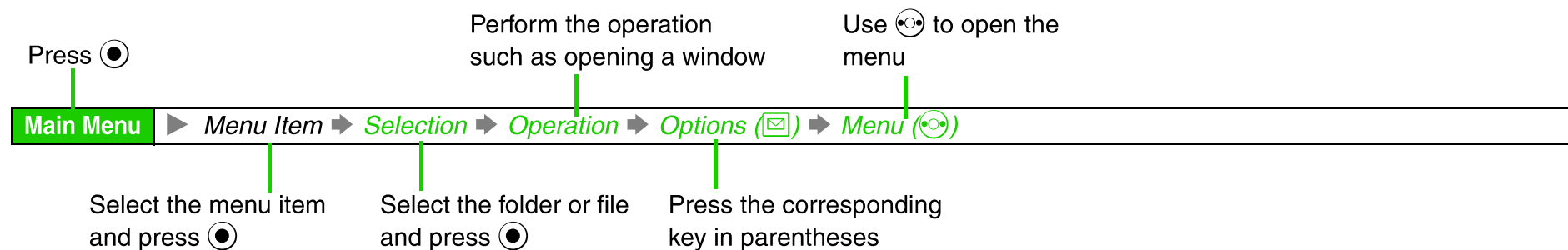
Side Keys

Indicated in this manual as shown below.
Activate/cancel Manner mode, adjust volume, etc.



Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Main Menu are abbreviated as follows:

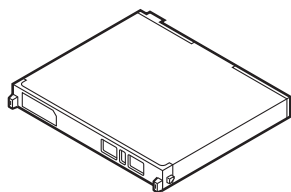


Manual descriptions are based on default Font Settings (see **P.9-4**). Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance when Font Settings are different or when Simple Menu (see **P.2-21**) is active.

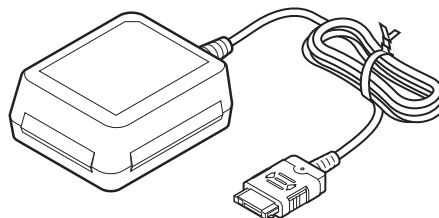
In this **SoftBank 812SH/813SH Instruction Manual**, **SoftBank 812SH/813SH** is referred to as **handset**.

Accessories

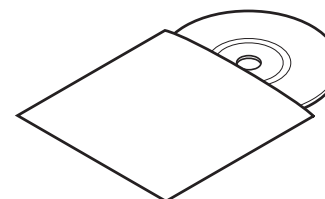
■ Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBAY1)



■ AC Charger (SHCAA1)



■ Utility Software (CD-ROM)*★



*Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available on SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

★Complimentary sample not available for purchase

Note ► Supplied Utility Software is designed exclusively for 812SH and 813SH.

- Tip** ►
- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
 - 812SH and 813Sh are compatible with microSD™ Memory Card; microSD™ Memory Card is not included in this package. Purchase microSD™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.
 - In this manual, microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card".

Contents

Symbols & Illustrations	i
Accessories	iv
Contents	v
Safety Precautions	xii
General Notes	xxii
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	xxx

1 Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
■ General Information & Precautions	1-4
■ Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-5
■ USIM PINs	1-6
Handset Parts & Functions	1-7
■ Handset	1-7
■ Display Indicators	1-9
■ Display Positions	1-11
Battery & Charger	1-12
■ Getting Started	1-12
■ Installing & Removing Battery	1-16
■ AC Charger	1-17
■ Desktop Holder	1-18
■ In-Car Charger	1-19
Handset Power On/Off	1-20
■ My Details	1-21
■ Keypad Lock	1-22
Handset Menus	1-23
■ Main Menu	1-23
■ User Shortcuts	1-24
■ Multi Job	1-26

Security Codes	1-27
■ Handset Code	1-27
■ Centre Access Code	1-27
■ Network Password	1-27

2 Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2
■ Emergency Calls	2-3
■ Redial	2-4
■ Placing an International Call from Japan	2-5
Incoming Call	2-6
■ Calling from Received Calls	2-8
Answer Phone	2-9
■ Activating & Cancelling	2-9
■ Playing Messages	2-10
Engaged Call Operations	2-11
■ Earpiece Volume	2-11
■ Voice Output	2-11
■ Voice Memo	2-12
■ Other Engaged Call Operations	2-12
Call Log	2-13
■ Using Call Log	2-13
Call Timers & Data Counter	2-14
■ Call Timers	2-14
■ Data Counter	2-14
Call Costs	2-15
■ Limit Call Costs	2-15
Outside Japan (International Roaming)	2-16
■ Switching Network Services	2-16
■ Calling from Outside Japan	2-17

Manner Mode	2-18
■ Minding Mobile Manners	2-18
■ Activating & Cancelling	2-19
■ Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode	2-20
Simple Menu	2-21
■ Activating/Cancelling Simple Menu	2-21
■ Simple Menu Operations	2-22

3 Text Entry

Character Selection	3-2
■ Entry Modes	3-2
■ Key Assignments	3-3
Entering Characters	3-5
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana	3-5
■ Entering Alphanumerics	3-7
■ Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons	3-8
■ Mail & Web Extensions	3-9
■ Character Code	3-9
■ Pager Code	3-9
Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)	3-11
■ Phonetic Conversion	3-11
■ One-Hiragana Conversion	3-11
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion	3-11
■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)	3-12
■ Conversion Settings	3-13
Editing Characters	3-13
■ Deleting & Replacing	3-13
■ Copy/Cut & Paste	3-13
■ Deleting Text On and After Cursor	3-14
Additional Functions	3-14
■ Copying from Phone Book	3-14
■ Using Text Templates	3-15
■ Changing Font Size	3-15

4 Phone Book

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book	4-3
■ Phone Book Entry Items	4-3
■ Creating Phone Book Entries	4-4
■ Saving from Call Log	4-8
■ Phone Book Memory Status	4-8
Using Phone Book	4-8
■ Dialling from Phone Book	4-8
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-10
■ Correction/Change	4-10
■ Copying Phone Book Entries	4-10
■ Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-11
Category Settings	4-11
■ Changing Category Name	4-11
■ Customising Handset Responses	4-12
Contact Groups	4-12
■ Creating Contact Groups	4-12
■ Saving Group Members	4-12
■ Editing Contact Groups	4-12
■ Editing Group Members	4-13
Speed Dial List	4-13
■ Saving Phone Numbers	4-13
■ Speed Dial	4-14
S! Address Book (SAB)	4-15
■ SAB Sync Commands & Features	4-15
■ Service Usage Outline	4-16
■ Saving User ID & Password	4-17
■ Backup & Restore	4-17
■ Synchronising Phone Book	4-18
■ Opening Log	4-19
My Details	4-19
■ Opening My Details	4-19

5 Video Call

Getting Started	5-2
Initiating a Video Call	5-3
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	5-4
Video Call Settings	5-6

6 Camera

Getting Started	6-2
■ Mobile Camera Basics	6-2
■ Camera Display Indicators	6-3
■ Key Assignments	6-4
Still Images	6-5
■ Photo Camera Mode	6-5
■ Capturing Still Images	6-6
■ Still Image Functions	6-7
Video	6-8
■ Video Camera Mode	6-8
■ Recording Video	6-8
■ Video Recording Operations	6-9
Opening Images & Playing Video	6-10
■ Opening Still Images	6-10
■ Playing Video	6-10
Special Shooting Modes	6-11
■ Self-timer	6-11
■ Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)	6-12
■ Adding Frames (Photo Camera)	6-13
■ Camera Effects (Photo Camera)	6-14
Sending Images	6-14
■ Still Images	6-14
■ Video Clips	6-15
Camera Settings	6-15
■ Shooting Options	6-15
■ Image Settings	6-16

■ Additional Settings	6-17

7 Media Player

Media Player Basics	7-2
■ Downloading Music/Video	7-2
■ Saving Music Files from PCs	7-3
Playing Music	7-4
■ Playback	7-6
■ Playback Settings	7-7
Playing Video	7-8
■ Playback	7-8
■ Playback Settings	7-10
Editing Video	7-11
■ Clipping Portions between Two Points	7-11
■ Cropping Video Clips	7-12
■ Adding Subtitles	7-12
Managing Video & Music Files	7-15
■ Adding New Playlist	7-16
■ Adding Files to Playlists	7-16
■ Deleting SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO Files	7-17

8 Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder	8-2
■ Window Description	8-2
■ Major Icons	8-3
■ Display Settings	8-4
Opening Files	8-5
Managing Files & Folders	8-8
■ Adding Folders	8-8
■ Changing File/Folder Name	8-8
■ Deleting Files & Folders	8-8
■ Copying/Moving Files	8-9
Using Files	8-10
■ Wallpaper	8-10
■ Saving to Phone Book	8-10

■ Ringvideo & Ringtone	8-10
■ S! Mail Attachments	8-11
■ Printing Images	8-11
Editing Still Images	8-12
■ Changing Image Size	8-12
■ Visual Effects (Retouch)	8-13
■ Adding Text & Stamps	8-14
■ Face Arrange	8-14
■ Additional Picture Effects	8-16
■ Panorama Images	8-17
■ Split Screen	8-18

9 Additional Settings

Mode Settings	9-2
■ Activating a Mode	9-2
■ Customising Modes	9-2
■ Reset	9-2
Display	9-3
■ Display Settings	9-3
■ Standby Window (Japanese Only)	9-6
■ Language Setting	9-9
■ Custom Screens	9-9
■ Familiar Usability	9-12
■ Light Settings	9-13
■ External Display Settings	9-13
Sounds & Alerts	9-14
■ Customising Handset Responses	9-14
■ Customising System Sounds	9-16
■ Additional Sound Settings	9-17
Date & Time	9-18
User Dictionary	9-19
■ Entries (Japanese Only)	9-19
■ 812SH/813SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)	9-19
Handset Security	9-20
■ Face Recognition	9-20

■ PIN	9-24
■ Handset Locks	9-25
■ Opening Secret Entries	9-27
■ Changing Handset Code	9-28
Reset	9-28
Call Settings	9-29
■ International Call	9-29
■ Auto Answer	9-30
■ Additional Settings	9-30

10 Connectivity

Bluetooth®	10-2
■ Getting Started	10-2
■ Transferring Files via Bluetooth®	10-4
■ Connecting Handsfree Devices	10-8
■ Bluetooth® Settings	10-9
Infrared	10-10
■ Getting Started	10-10
■ Transferring Files via Infrared	10-10
Network Settings	10-14
Location Info	10-15

11 Memory Card

Memory Card	11-2
■ Precautions	11-2
■ Inserting & Removing Memory Card	11-3
■ Format Card	11-4
■ Backup & Restore	11-4
■ Additional Functions	11-7
Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)	11-7
■ Selecting Images & Prints	11-7
■ Print Settings	11-8
Mass Storage	11-9

12 Tools	
Calendar	12-2
■ Opening Calendar	12-2
■ Saving Entries	12-4
■ Opening Entries	12-6
■ Searching Entries by Subject	12-6
■ Editing Entries	12-7
■ Deleting Entries	12-7
Tasks	12-8
■ Saving Entries	12-8
■ Opening Entries	12-10
■ Searching Entries by Subject	12-10
■ Editing Entries	12-11
■ Deleting Entries	12-11
Alarm	12-11
■ Setting Alarm	12-11
■ Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm	12-14
■ Deleting Alarm	12-14
World Clock	12-14
■ Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving	12-14
■ Opening World Clock	12-15
Calculator	12-15
Voice Recorder	12-16
■ Preparation	12-16
■ Recording	12-16
■ Playback	12-17
■ Recording Setting	12-17
Document Viewer	12-18
Barcode	12-19
Create QR Codes	12-22
Text Scanner	12-23
Stopwatch	12-24
Countdown Timer	12-25
Expenses Memo	12-25

Text Templates	12-26
■ New Entry	12-26
■ Opening Templates	12-26
■ Editing Templates	12-27
■ Deleting Templates	12-27
Phone Help	12-27

13 Optional Services	
Optional Services Overview	13-2
Call Forwarding	13-2
Voicemail	13-4
■ Missed Call Notification	13-5
Call Waiting	13-5
Conference Call	13-6
Call Barring	13-7
■ Restricting Outgoing Calls	13-8
■ Restricting Incoming Calls	13-8
■ Rejecting a Call	13-9
■ Changing Network Password	13-10
Caller ID	13-10

14 Messaging	
Basics	14-2
■ Messaging Folders	14-2
■ Window Description	14-3
■ Changing Views	14-4
■ Customising Handset Address	14-5
Sending Text Messages	14-5
■ Basics	14-5
■ Creating & Sending SMS Mail	14-6
■ Creating & Sending S! Mail	14-7
■ Delivery Options	14-15
■ Send Reservation	14-17
■ Using Drafts	14-18
Incoming Text Messages	14-18

■ Opening New Messages	14-18
■ Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages	14-21
■ Retrieving Mail List	14-22
Using Messages	14-23
■ Checking Messages	14-23
■ Replying to Messages	14-25
■ Forwarding Messages	14-26
■ Cancelling Sent Messages	14-27
■ Linked Info	14-27
■ Protecting Messages	14-28
■ Deleting Messages	14-29
■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder	14-30
■ Using Attachments	14-30
■ My Folders	14-31
Additional Functions	14-33
■ Speed Mail List	14-33
■ Speed Mail	14-34
■ Auto Resend	14-34
■ General Settings	14-34
■ SMS Settings	14-36
■ S! Mail Settings	14-37
15 Yahoo! Keitai	
Getting Started	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai	15-3
■ Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu	15-3
■ Entering URLs Directly	15-4
Basic Operations	15-5
Advanced Features	15-9
■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-9
■ Saving Files to Data Folder	15-11
■ Using Linked Info	15-12
Streaming	15-12
Live Monitor (Japanese Only)	15-14
■ Live Monitor Basics	15-14

■ Opening Information	15-15
■ Registering with Live Monitor Items	15-15
■ Updating Live Monitor Items	15-16
■ Automatic Update	15-16
■ Deleting Live Monitor Items	15-17
Using PC Site Browser	15-18
■ Opening Yahoo! JAPAN	15-18
■ Entering URLs Directly	15-19
Additional Functions	15-19
■ Sub Menu Settings	15-19
■ Common Settings	15-20
■ PC Site Browser Settings	15-21
■ Security Settings	15-21

16 S! Applications

Getting Started	16-2
■ S! Appli Library	16-2
■ S! Applications on Memory Card	16-3
■ Downloading S! Applications	16-3
Using S! Applications	16-4
■ Starting S! Applications	16-4
■ Exit, Pause & Resume	16-4
Managing S! Applications	16-5
■ Opening S! Application Properties	16-5
■ Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	16-5
■ Deleting S! Applications	16-5
■ Screensaver	16-6
■ Setting Permissions	16-7
■ S! Application Operational Settings	16-7
■ Reset	16-8

17 S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)

Basics	17-2
■ Starting Lifestyle-Appli	17-3
Using S! FeliCa	17-3

S! FeliCa Settings	17-4
■ IC Card Status	17-4
■ IC Card Lock	17-4
■ Remote Lock	17-5
■ Interface Settings	17-7
■ Resetting Defaults	17-8

18 Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese Only)	18-2
■ Basics	18-2
■ Service Registration & Content Subscription	18-2
■ Opening Received Information	18-2
■ Using Information	18-3
■ Using Weather Indicator	18-4
Electronic Books	18-5
■ Reading Content	18-6
■ Using E-Book Images	18-8
■ Using a Dictionary	18-8
BookSurfing® (Japanese Only)	18-9

19 Communication

S! Town (Japanese Only)	19-2
■ Using S! Town	19-2
■ S! Town Library	19-3
S! Loop (Japanese Only)	19-3
Hot Status	19-4
■ Adding Members	19-5
■ Opening Member Status Details	19-7
■ My Status	19-8
■ Editing Hot Status Member List	19-10
■ Deleting Members	19-10
■ Using Hot Status Info	19-11
■ Hot Status Settings	19-11
■ Additional Functions	19-12

Circle Talk	19-13
■ Initiating Circle Talk	19-14
■ Accepting a Circle Talk Request	19-16
■ Adding/Cancelling Participants	19-16
■ Creating Circle Talk Member List	19-17
■ Editing Circle Talk Member List	19-18
■ Circle Talk Settings	19-18
Near Chat (Japanese Only)	19-19
■ Basics	19-19
■ Using Near Chat	19-19

20 Appendix

Function List	20-2
Troubleshooting	20-4
Software Update	20-8
Character Code List	20-10
Pictogram List	20-16
Specifications	20-17
Memory List	20-19
Index	20-20
Warranty & After-Sales Services	20-28
Customer Service	20-29

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:



DANGER

Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use



WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury from improper use



CAUTION

Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

■ Symbols



Prohibited Actions



Compulsory Actions



Attention Required

DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (see P.iv).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.



Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry battery.



Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:



- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see **P.iv**)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset, Charger or Desktop Holder.

Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.



Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may result.



Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep the handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.



Keep battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder away from microwave ovens.

Battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.



Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.



- Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

If water or foreign matter is inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.



WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using S! FeliCa at filling stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts.



Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:



If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odour, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.

Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.



- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective 1 November 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially near rail crossings/intersections, etc. to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by strap.

May result in injury or breakage.



Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.



Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:

Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.



During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



WARNING

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**

- SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging battery abroad.

- **In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input**

Do not use power adapters.

Using AC Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles only.

Charger care

- Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.

Take measures to prevent accidents.

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.

Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.

During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.

Charger/Desktop Holder use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.

WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odour, avoid fire sources. Battery may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odour, excessive heat, discolouration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



Consult electronic medical equipment vendor on radio wave effects.



CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discolouration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.



Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.



Handset

Handset temperature

Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.



Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.



Volume settings

Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Inside vehicles

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.



⚠ CAUTION

Handset

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.
See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side), Display ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: discontinuous deposition)
Housing (Display back side), hinge cover (Keypad side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: discontinuous deposition) for metallic blue and silver
Hinge housing (left & right, Display side)	Nylon-based resin (with glass fibres)/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic and urethane painting)
External Display ornament panel	Acrylic resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: printed foil)
Housing (Keypad/Keypad back side), battery cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Multi Selector (centre, Cursor Keys)	ABS resin (chrome plating on nickel plating)
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Side Keys, Keypad	PC resin/Paint
Memory Card Slot cover, Headphone Port cover, External Device Port cover	Urethane-based resin, PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display stop rubber	Silicon rubber
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel plating)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH12A/Ni plating
Screw cover	PC resin
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
External Camera window	Acrylic resin
Portrait/Macro Selector	ABS resin

CAUTION

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.

May cause burn injuries.



Use only the specified fuse.

1 A fuse for In-Car Charger.
Or may cause damage/fire.



Always charge battery in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.



Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.



During periods of disuse

Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



Handset maintenance

Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset.



In-Car Charger installation

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



CAUTION

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.



Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Keep battery out of children's reach.



- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odour or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.



General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
Eavesdropping
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
812SH	APYHRO00054	1.27 W/kg	0.77 W/kg
813SH	APYHRO00055	1.45 W/kg	1.10 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
812SH	1.647 W/kg	1.258 W/kg
813SH	1.619 W/kg	0.903 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

* Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on **P.xxii** for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

**Values are measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

C € 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 812SH and 813SH are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C to 35°C and 35% to 85% humidity. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage colour filter and affect image colour.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using Headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Function Usage Limits**
These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/
replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera ■ Media Player ■ S! Applications

After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable;
retrieve Network Information (see **P.10-15**) to restore usability.

- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.**
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only the specified products to Headphone Port.
Non-specified devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with 812SH camera.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No licence is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional licence and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional licence may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.

Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries. Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.





microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player (SMIL player) developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2004-2006 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of handset is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move to other place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.

From landlines, see **P.20-29** "Customer Service".

- This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is ten metres.



Microsoft® Word is a product name of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Microsoft Excel® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs Macromedia® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1995-2006 Adobe Systems

Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash and Macromedia Flash Lite are either registered

trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems

Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™

Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation

©2002-2006 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.

Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing is a trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, Standby Window, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, Live Monitor, S! Address Book, Circle Talk, Hot Status, Lifestyle-Appli and Familiar Usability are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

CP8 PATENT

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

812SH and 813SH meet the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg^{*}.

This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value is 1.43 W/kg for 812SH, and 1.50 W/kg for 813SH. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure.

The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the Websites on the right.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (Protection from Radio Wave Environment)

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (Japanese only)

^{*}Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2)

Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview

- Memory Card is required for items with grey background.
- ★These items are not available on 813SH.

Circle Talk

Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously via this Walkie-Talkie type service.

P.19-13

PC Site Browser

View websites designed for PCs on handset.

P.15-18

S! Town

Select an avatar to enter 3D virtual town via this online communication application.

P.19-2

S! Loop

S! Loop is a communication service.

P.19-3

E-Book/Document Viewer

Read E-Book, E-Book dictionaries or documents (PDF files, etc.) on handset.

P.18-5, P.12-18

USIM Card

For use only with USIM Card-compatible SoftBank handsets; contains vital user information.

P.1-4

International Roaming

Make/receive calls, exchange mail or access services even outside Japan.

P.2-16

Manner Mode

Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Answer Phone automatically.

P.2-18

Simple Menu

Select a simplified menu, ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

P.2-21

Phone Book

Save up to 750 entries; add up to three phone numbers/three mail addresses to each.

P.4-2

S! Address Book (SAB)

Backup Phone Book via Server; synchronise Phone Book/SAB to reflect changes.

P.4-15

Video Call★

Place or receive video calls: send live video or previously saved still image during calls.

P.5-2

Camera★

Capture still/video images shot with the 2 megapixel handset camera; send images via S! Mail.

P.6-2

Media Player

Play downloaded music and video images as well as those recorded/captured on handset.

P.7-2

Data Folder

Access handset image and sound files from here; files are organised by file type.

P.8-2

microSD™ Memory Card

Save files to Memory Card to expand handset memory or backup your handset files.

P.11-2

Display

Change Wallpaper, System Graphics, Fonts, et cetera to customise handset interface.

P.9-3

Display Language

Change Phone Settings to make handset user interface appear in either English or Japanese.

P.9-9

Custom Screen

Load uni-themed Wallpaper, Indicators, ringtones, and more, all at the same time.

P.9-9

Face Recognition★

Save up to five facial images to use along with passwords, etc. to restrict handset access.

P.9-20

Bluetooth® & High-Speed Infrared

Wirelessly exchange handset files with compatible devices. Use Bluetooth® headsets, etc.

P.10-2, P.10-10

Mass Storage

Use a PC to directly access Memory Card content while card is inserted into handset.

P.11-9

Calendar & Tasks

Add events by date with time parameters; set Reminder, add stamps and set other options.

P.12-2, P.12-8

Voice Recorder

Save voice memos on handset or Memory Card; send via S! Mail or use as ringtone.

P.12-16

Barcodes & Text Scanner★

Scan UPC/QR Codes and text or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc.

P.12-19, P.12-22, P.12-23

S! FeliCa

Hold handset over compatible reader/writers to use e-money services, etc. all around Japan.

P.17-2

S! Cast

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals delivered overnight to your handset automatically.

P.18-2

Near Chat

Exchange instant messages with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres.

P.19-19

Optional Services

Call Forwarding

Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number.

P.13-2

Voicemail

Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail; access messages from handset/touchtone landline.

P.13-4

Missed Call Notification

Receive records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

P.13-5

Call Waiting

Reduce missed calls! Answer incoming calls even while the handset is already engaged.

P.13-5

Conference Call

Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for wireless teleconferencing.

P.13-6

Call Barring

Restrict all incoming/outgoing calls or apply restrictions by type of call/current location.

P.13-7

Caller ID

Set handset to show/hide your phone number for all outgoing calls or enter show/hide prefix.

P.13-10

USIM Card

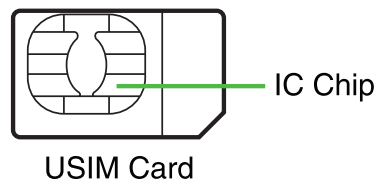
General Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

- Save contacts on USIM Card Phone Book (see **P.4-3**).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device.

SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.

- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.



Note ► Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after repairs, USIM Card replacement or handset upgrade/replacement.
In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

■ If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks

Handset may not recognise USIM Card; **REFRESH** appears and handset returns to Standby. This is not a malfunction. If **Insert USIM Card** appears or handset does not restart, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart handset.

Important

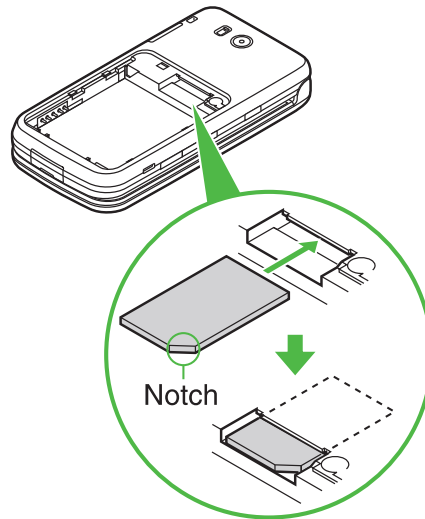
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

- Follow the steps below after removing battery (see **P.1-16**).
- Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
- Avoid contact with USIM Card IC chip and Battery terminals; may hinder performance or result in lost data (see **P.1-4**).

Inserting

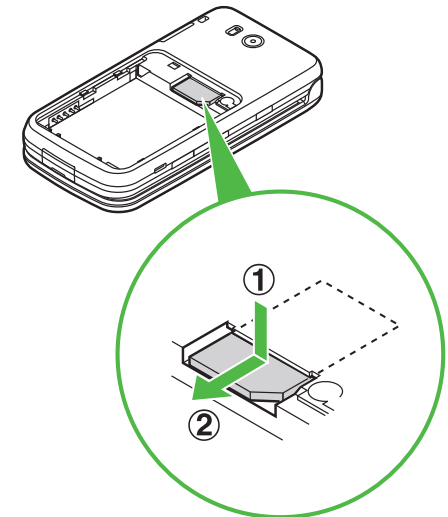
- 1 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down**
- 2 Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-16)**



Removing

Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

- 1 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown**
- 2 Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-16)**



USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: **PIN1** and **PIN2**.

PIN1

A 4-digit to 8-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorised use of handset.

- PIN 1 is **9999** by default; change as needed (see **P.9-25** "Change PIN").
- Activate PIN Entry (see **P.9-24**) to require PIN1 entry each time handset (USIM Card inserted) is turned on.

PIN2

Required to clear Call Costs or set Max Cost (see **P.2-15**).

PIN 2 is **9999** by default; change as needed (see **P.9-25** "Change PIN").

PIN Lock & PUK Code

PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. Cancel PIN Lock (see **P.9-24**) by entering the Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code). For information on PUK Code, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

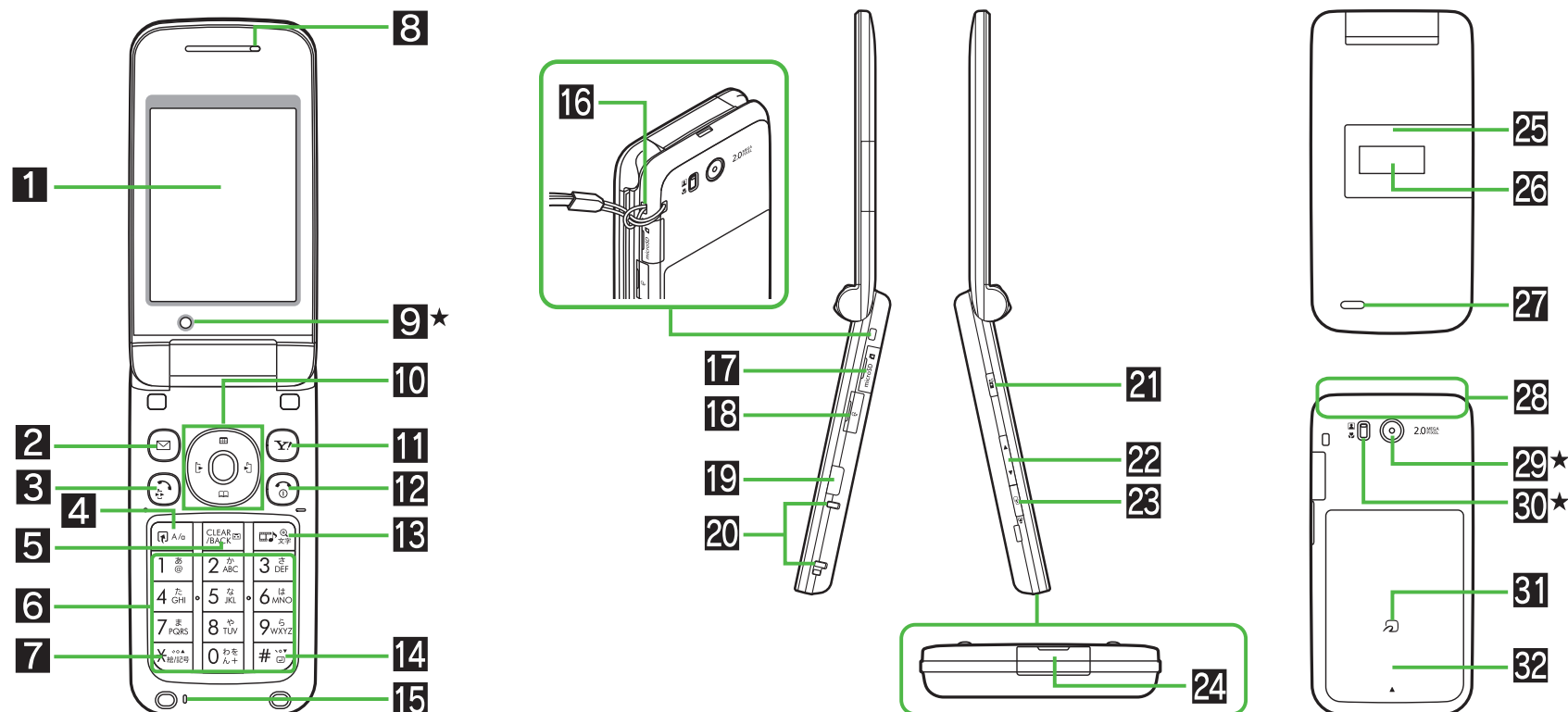
Note ►

- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled. Write down PUK Code.
- For USIM Card unlocking procedures, call SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
- Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when PIN Entry (see **P.9-24**) is active. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Handset Parts & Functions

★813SH is not equipped with these parts (19, 29 and 30).

Handset



1 Display

2 Mail Key

Open Messaging menu or execute Soft Key functions (see P.1-23).

3 Start Key

Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.

4 Shortcuts & A/a Key

Open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.

5 Clear/Back Key

Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.

6 Keypad

7 ✕ Key

In text entry windows, open Symbol/Pictogram Lists.

8 Earpiece**9 Internal Camera★**

Use during Video Call.

10 Multi Selector & Keypad Lock Key

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

11 Yahoo! Keitai Key

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu or execute Soft Key functions (see P.1-23).

12 Power On/Off Key

Press and hold to turn handset power on/off.

13 Multimedia/Text Key

Start Media Player or change character entry mode. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Simple Menu.

14 # Key**15 Microphone****16 Strap Eyelet**

Attach straps as shown; avoid metallic straps.

17 Memory Card Slot

Insert Memory Card here.

18 Headphone Port

Connect optional Headphones, etc.

19 Infrared Port

Use for infrared data transmissions.

20 Charger Terminal**21 Circle Talk Key**

Press to speak during Circle Talk.

22 Volume/Zoom Key

Adjust Earpiece Volume or zoom mobile camera.

23 Multi Job/Manner Key

Toggle multiple active function windows. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.

24 External Device Port

Connect Charger here.

25 Small Light

Flashes for calls/new mail; illuminates red while charging.

26 External Display**27 Speaker****28 Internal Antenna Location****29 External Camera (lens cover)★****30 Portrait () / Macro () Selector★**

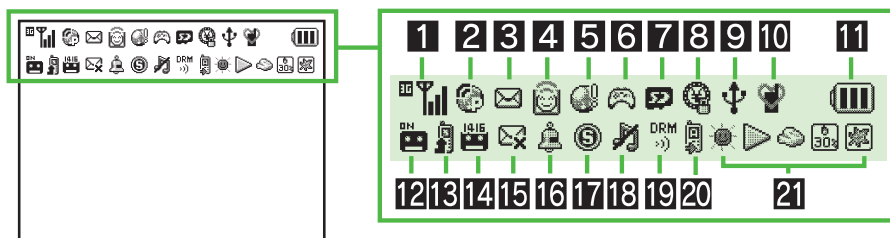
31 **Logo**

S! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place  logo over reader/writer to use IC Card.

32 **Battery Cover****Note** ► **Internal Antenna**

- Handset has no external antenna. Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.
- For better reception in Standby, close handset (see **P.1-11**).

Tip ► Descriptions (**P.1-7 - 1-9**) are illustrative of general handset usage.

Display Indicators**Display****1** **Signal Strength**

- : Within 3G range, : Within GSM range
: Strong, : Moderate, : Low, : Weak
: Out-of-Range

2 **Calls/Circle Talk, Offline Mode (see P.2-20)****SSL, Packet Transmission (see P.15-3)**

- : Incoming Voice Call, : Voice Call in Progress
¹: Incoming Video Call, ¹: Video Call in Progress
: Incoming Circle Talk Request, : Offline Mode, : SSL
: Packet Transmission Protocol Ready
: Waiting²/Packet Transmission in Progress
: Packet Transmission Available

¹Undisplayable on 813SH.

²Appears constantly if IP Service Setting (see **P.9-26**) is **On** and Hot Status Connection Setting (see **P.19-9**) is **Online**.

3 **Mail (see P.14-3)**

- : Unread Mail, : Unread Delivery Report
 (red): Memory Low
: Receiving Mail, : Sending Mail

4 **Hot Status***

- : Hot Status Online, : Unread Hot Status Notification
: Hot Status Registration Request Received

*Appears constantly if IP Service Setting (see **P.9-26**) is **On** and Hot Status Connection Setting (see **P.19-9**) is **Online**.

5 **Auto Delivery Info, Cast Info (see P.18-2)****Software Update (see P.20-8)**

- : Auto Delivery Info, : Cast Info
: Software Update, : Software Update Result
: Live Monitor Info

6 **S! Application (see P.16-4), Music Player (see P.7-5)**

- : Activate S! Application, : Paused S! Application
: Music Player Active

7 Memory Card Status, Loudspeaker**Microphone Mute (see P.2-11)**

: Inserted, : In Use, : Formatting

: Unusable/Poor Connection

: Loudspeaker Active, : Microphone Muted

: Loudspeaker Active & Microphone Muted

8 Multi Job (see P.1-26), IC Card Lock

: Multiple Functions (Multi Job) Active

: IC Card Lock Active

9 External Transmission, PC Site Browser (see P.15-18)

: USB Transmission Ready

: USB Transmission in Progress

: Infrared Connection in Progress

: Infrared Transmission in Progress

: Bluetooth® Transmission Ready

Appears in grey when Visibility is set to **Hide My Phone**.

: Bluetooth® Transmission in Progress

: Bluetooth® Talk in Progress

: PC Site Browser in Use

10 Mode (see P.9-2)

: Manner, : Drive, : Original

11 Battery Strength (see P.1-15)

Indicator may appear vertically (e.g.).

12 Answer Phone (see P.2-9)

: Answer Phone Active

: Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded

: Answer Phone Cancelled & Message Recorded

13 Call Forwarding or Voicemail Active (see P.13-2)

Appears when **Always** (forwarding condition) is set for Voice Calls.

14 New Voicemail (see P.13-4)**15 Message Delivery Failure (see P.14-9)****16 Alarm (see P.12-11), Schedule (see P.12-4)**

: Alarm Set

: Reminder Set, : Reminder Unset

17 Show Secret Data (see P.9-27)**Password Lock (see P.9-25), Keypad Lock (see P.1-22)**

: Show Secret Data Active

: Password Lock Active, : Keypad Lock Active

18 Ringtone (see P.9-14), Vibration (see P.9-15)

: Silent, : Increasing Volume, : Vibration Active

: Silent & Vibration Active

19 Copyright Information, Infrared Transmission

: Content Key Received

When Content Key memory is low, (below 10 %) or (below 5 %) appears.

(grey): Infrared Transmission Ready

20 Auto Answer (see P.9-30) or Remote Monitor (see P.5-8) Active**21 Weather Indicator (see P.18-4)**

External Display

Press ,  or  with handset closed to turn External Display Backlight on. When new mail arrives, press  to read the message (see P.14-19).

External Display shuts off after set Duration (see P.9-13).

Indicators

See major External Display indicators below.



Clock View

While External Display Backlight is on (with handset closed), press  to toggle Clock view (Large Clock, Clock (S), World Clock or Clock & Date).

- Display Date & Time setting (see P.9-13) is not affected.
- View is fixed while music plays, during infrared transfers, etc.

Additional Indicators

Indicator and number of calls/messages, etc. appear for missed calls, new mail/information, etc.

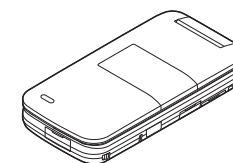
Missed Calls		New Delivery Report	
Answer Phone Message		Message Delivery Failure	
Missed Call Notification		Content Key	
New Voicemail		Bluetooth® Notification	
Alarm		New Cast Info	
Schedule Reminder		Cast Reception Failure	
Task Reminder		Hot Status Notification	
New Messages		Weather Indicator Update	

- Up to two indicators appear at the same time. Press  or  to view more.
- Corresponding Pictogram (, etc.) appears for Feeling Mail.

Display Positions

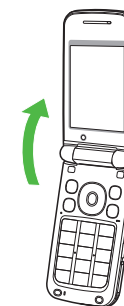
Handset Closed

Handset is closed. Keep handset in this position when not in use.



Handset Open

Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.



Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life.
Ideally, use/store between 5°C - 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/ battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.

Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)

- Charging takes approximately 150 minutes (with handset off).
 - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- Handset and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Humidity, dust and vibration
 - Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Tip ►

- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
- While charging battery with handset on,  flashes until battery is fully charged.
- Battery will charge regardless of handset position.

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Talk Time	150 minutes in 3G 240 minutes in GSM
Continuous Standby Time	330 minutes in 3G 320 minutes in GSM
Continuous Operating Time	7 hours
Continuous Playback Time	16.5 hours
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	80 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level:2**.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays (Sound Effects set to **Normal**) using Headphones, Offline Mode cancelled, and with handset closed.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

• Poor Usage Conditions

- Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C to 35°C)
- Impaired handset, battery or Charger terminals
- Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range

• Power Consuming Operations

- Activating/using S! Applications
- Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
- Playing video images
- Continuous Keypad use (keeping backlights on for long periods)
- Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
- Frequent Bluetooth® transmissions
- Frequent infrared transfers
- Frequent opening/closing of handset

• Power Consuming Settings

- Increasing Backlight Time Out/Display Saving time
- Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
- Activating Bluetooth® in Standby
- Activating Keypad Tones

Extend Battery Time

Adjust Light Settings (see P.9-13) to extend Battery Time.

Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time and lower Brightness.

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound. Press  to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

During Video Call

A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Battery Disposal

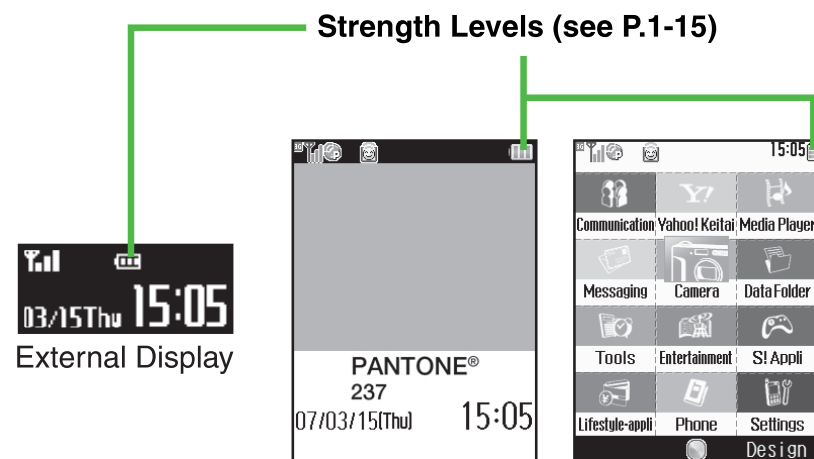
Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Tip ► This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit battery
 - Disassemble battery



Battery Strength

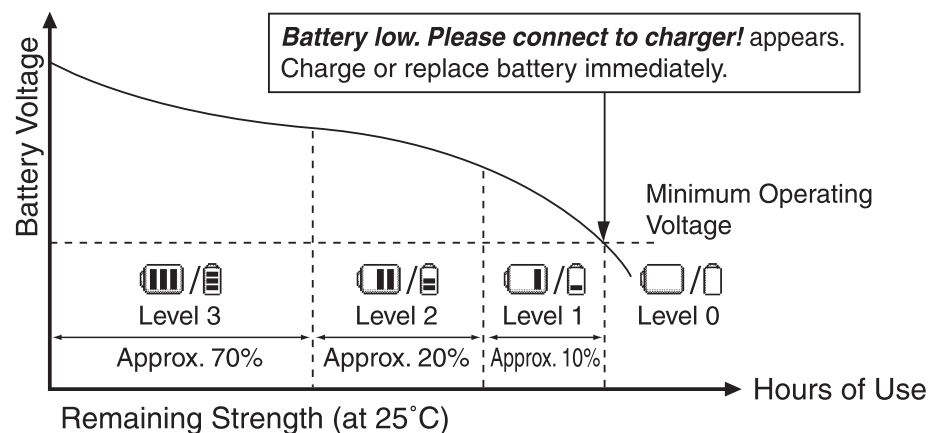


When battery runs out, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Indicator

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.

Charge or replace when level is low.



Battery Strength & Environment

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.

At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

- Note** ►
- Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.
 - At Level 1, some functions including Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate (see **P.6-8, P.7-4, P.12-16**).

Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

Handset Power On

Small Light	Indicator ( / )	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	On	Charging completed/Standby

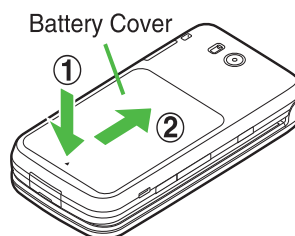
Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator ( / )	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

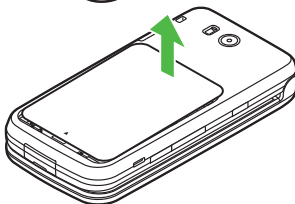
Installing & Removing Battery

Inserting

- 1 Press down and slide cover as shown**

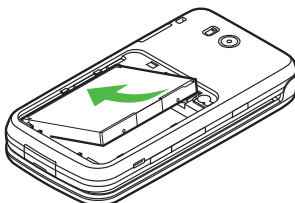


- 2 Lift and remove cover as shown**



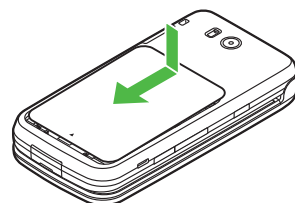
- 3 Insert battery**

- With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.



- 4 Close cover**

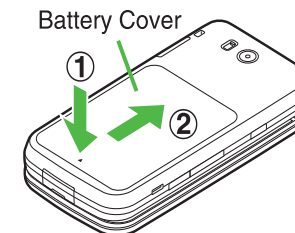
- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.



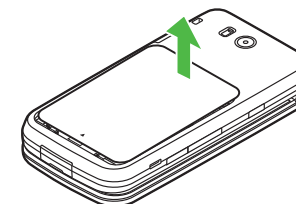
Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

- 1 Press down and slide cover as shown**

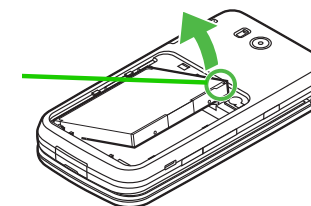


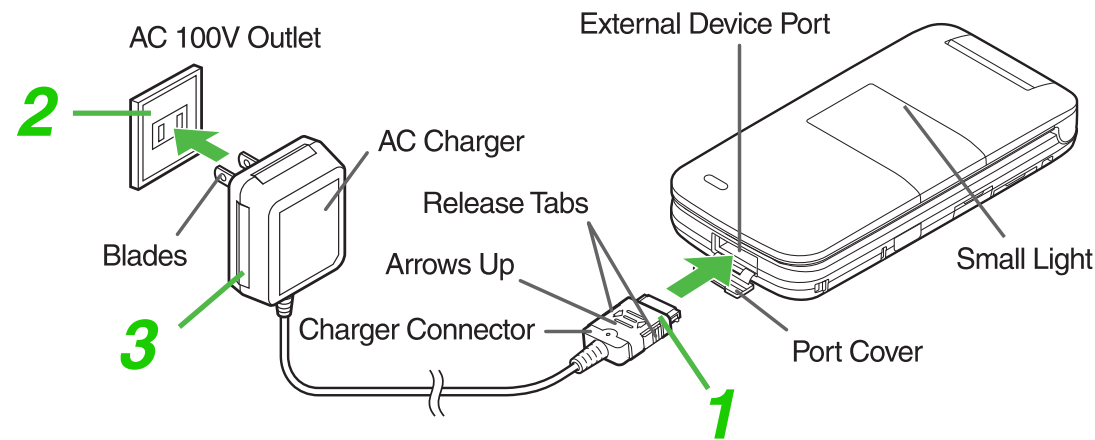
- 2 Lift and remove cover as shown**



- 3 Remove battery**

- Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.

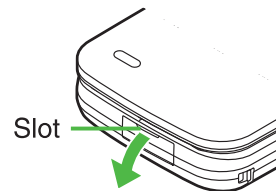




Use specified Charger only.

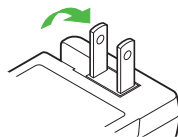
1 Open Port Cover to connect Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.
- **Use slot to gently pull Port Cover down and out as shown.**



2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see **P.1-15**). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.
- **Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)**



3 After Charging

Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

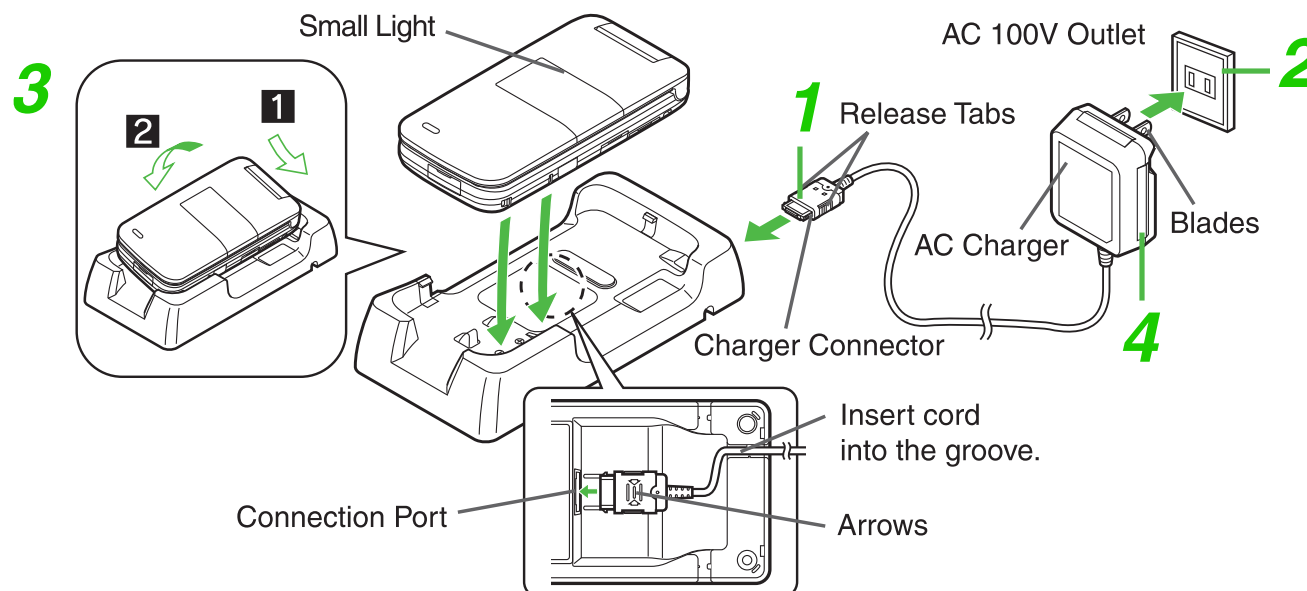
- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

Note

- Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
- AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder may be purchased separately.



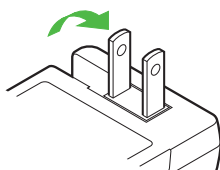
Use specified Charger only.

1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks

- Connection Port is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)



3 Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-15). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

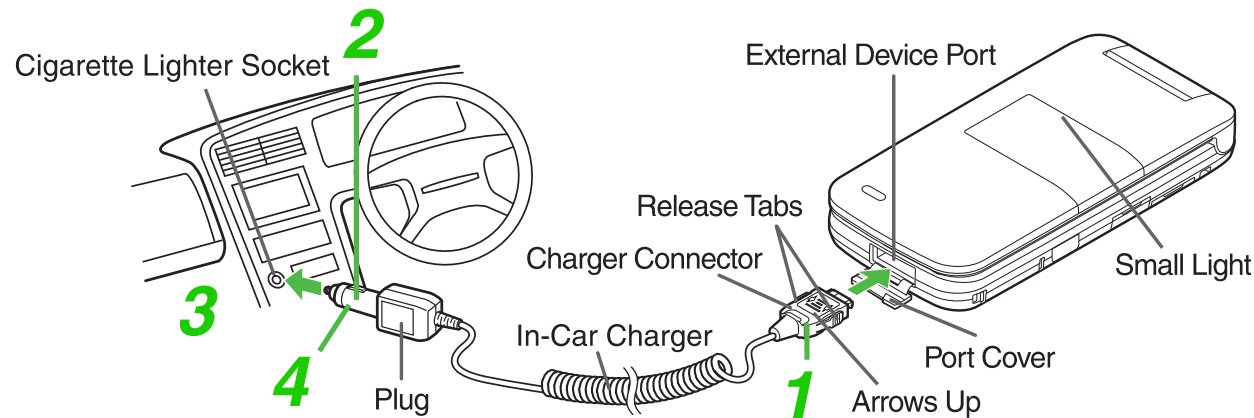
4 After Charging

Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

- To remove connector, squeeze release tabs.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



1 Open Port Cover to connect In-Car Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.

2 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

3 Start car engine

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-15). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

Tip ►

- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
- Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

4 After Charging

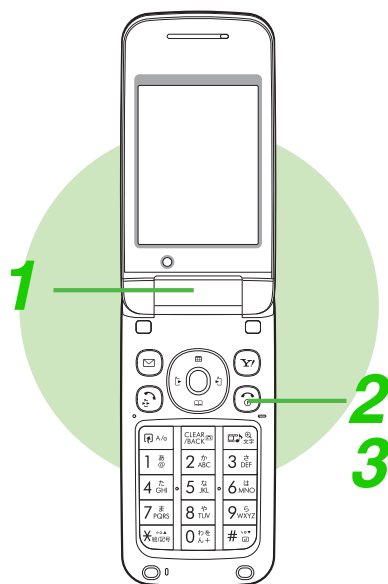
Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

Note ►

- Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles only.
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
- Never use handset while driving.

Handset Power On/Off



Standby

1 Open handset

2 Press and hold

After Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

3 Turning Off

Press for 2+ seconds

After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

My Details Setup & Network Information

- When handset is turned on for the first time, setup confirmation appears after Power On Graphic.
Choose Yes or はい → Press → Enter last name → Press → Enter first name → Press

- Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , , or is pressed for the first time.
Choose Yes or はい → Press
 - Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services. (Clock is set automatically after retrieval.)
 - To update Network Information manually, see **P.10-15 "Retrieve NW Info"**.
 - Unless otherwise noted, operations in this manual are described with Clock set.

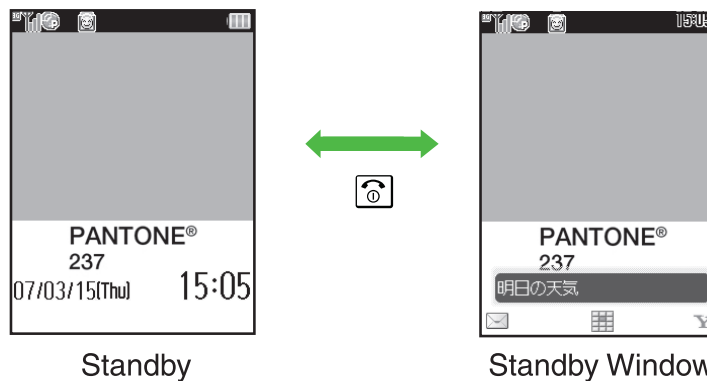
Return to Standby

- Press to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.
 - When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Handset returns to Standby.

- Note** ▶
- USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
 - Insert USIM Card** appears when USIM Card is not inserted (see **P.1-4**).
 - Some functions are disabled if handset is left with power off or out-of-range for long periods. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

- Tip** ▶ Display turns off after a period of inactivity.

Opening Standby Window



- Press to toggle Standby Window on/off.

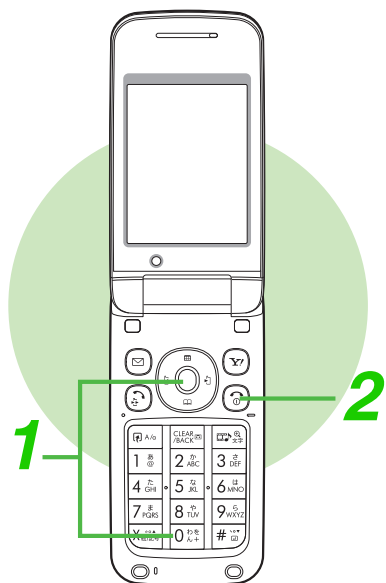
My Details

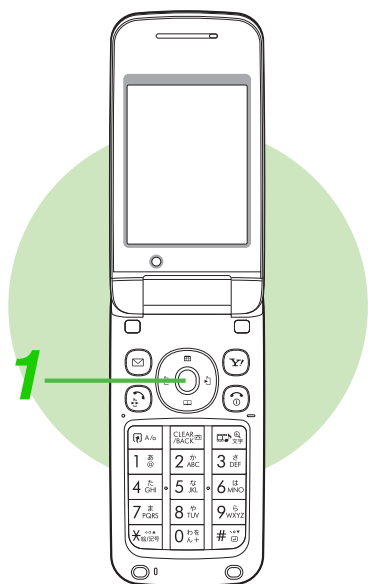
1 Press 0 わをん+

Handset phone number appears.

- To add, edit or delete My Details, see **P.4-19**.

2 Press to exit





Keypad Lock

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

Activating

1 Press for 1+ seconds

appears and Keypad Lock is set.

Cancelling

1 Press for 1+ seconds

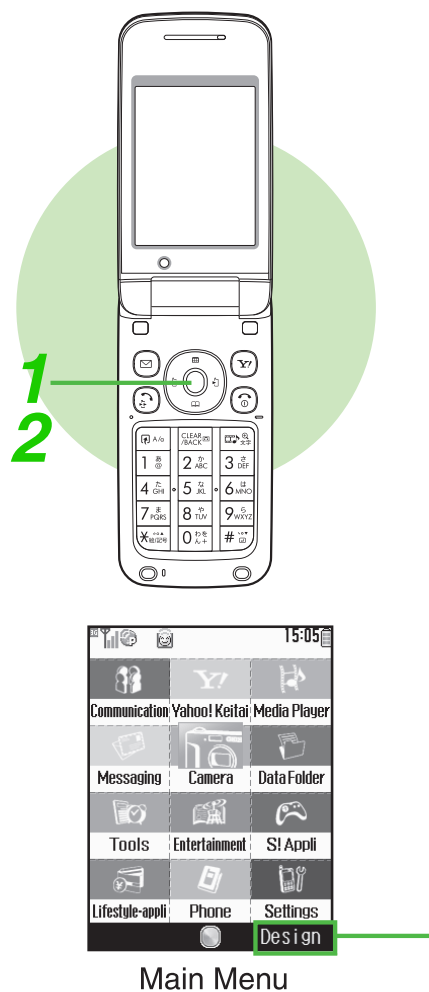
disappears.

Note ► Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Keypad Lock is active. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Tip ► When Keypad Lock is Active

- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press . [Activate Any Key Answer (see **P.9-17**) to answer calls with other keys (see **P.2-6**).] Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Handset Menus



Main Menu

Access functions/operations from **Main Menu**.

1 Press

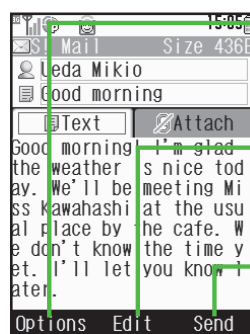
Main Menu opens.

2 Use to select an item and press

Sub Menu opens (see P.20-2 - 20-3).

Soft Keys

■ Soft Key functions appear at the bottom of Display.



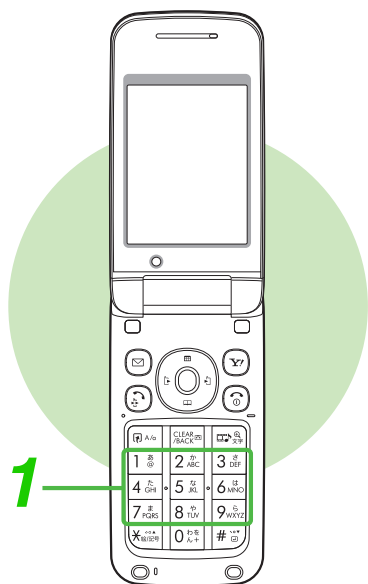
Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Main Menu Items

Communication	Launch Hot Status, Circle Talk, S! Town, S! Loop or Near Chat
Yahoo! Keitai	Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites or use Live Monitor
Media Player	Play/download music/video
Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Camera	Capture still images or record video
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/ Memory Card
Tools	Use Calendar, Alarms, etc.
Entertainment	Launch BookSurfing®/S! Cast or read E-Books
S! Appli	Use/download S! Applications
Lifestyle-appli	Customise IC Card settings to use e-money services, etc.
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customise handset interface, sounds, etc.



User Shortcuts

Using Shortcuts

Press a key (1 あ - 9 ら) to access assigned function, folder or menu.

Default Shortcuts:

1 あ	Received Msg.	4 た GHI	Calendar	7 ま PQRS	Calculator
2 か ABC	Create Message	5 な JKL	Phone Book List	8 や TUV	Alarms
3 さ DEF	Bookmarks	6 は MNO	Data Folder	9 ら WXYZ	Bluetooth®

1 In Standby, press a key (1 あ - 9 ら) for 1+ seconds

Assigned function, folder or menu opens.

Editing Shortcuts

Edit items except **Main Menu** and **Enter Number**.

Assign

Change default shortcuts

Press ➔ Select an item ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Assign** ➔ Press ➔ Select new item ➔ Press Assign

Move

Change item order

Press ➔ Select an item ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press ➔ Use to select target location ➔ Press

Set to Default

Restore default shortcuts

Press ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Set to Default** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions. Accessible functions vary by entered digits. To activate functions, press corresponding Soft Key.

Digits \ Function	1	2	3	4	5 - 6	7 - 10	11 - 12	13 - 24	25 - 32
Speed Dial (see P.4-14)	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Speed Video Call (see P.4-14)	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Calculator (see P.12-15)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×
Expenses Memo (see P.12-25)	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×
Speed Mail (see P.14-33)	○ ¹	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Calendar (see P.12-2)	×	×	×	○ ²	×	×	×	×	×
Set Alarm (see P.12-11)	×	×	×	○ ³	×	×	×	×	×
Call Circle Talk (see P.19-14)	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×
Place International Calls (see P.2-5)	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○

¹ Press [Mail] after entering a number. Save entries to Speed Mail List (see P.14-33) beforehand.

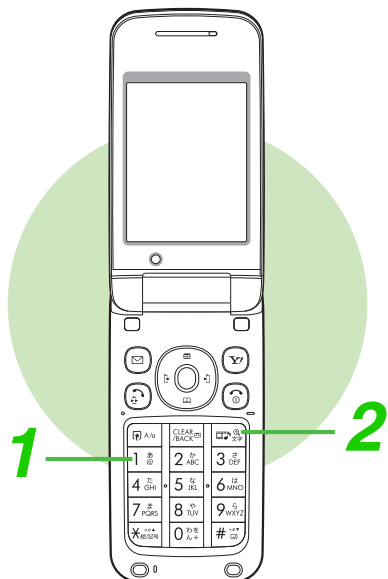
² Enter four digits for month and day and press [Clock] to view entries up to 12 months forward of current date.

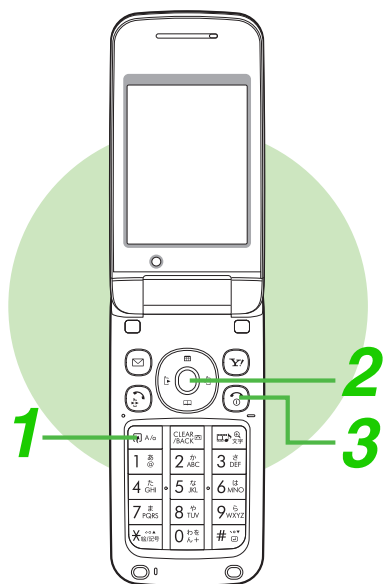
³ Enter four digits for time (24-hour format) to set Alarm.

Example: Enter 1111 to use Calculator

1 Press [1] [あ] [1] [あ] [1] [あ] [1] [あ]

2 Press [Calculator]





Multi Job

Open a function window while another is active.

1 In a function window, press

Shortcuts menu opens.

- Some shortcuts are disabled.
- Multi Job cannot be activated from some windows/under some conditions (e.g. when an S! Application is active, etc.).
- In text/phone number entry windows, press for 1+ seconds.

2 Select a function and press

Menu/window opens (appears).

- Press to toggle active windows.

3 Press to exit

The other window appears (disappears).

When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes**

➔ Press

Handling Incoming Calls

- Press to answer a call. End the call to return.

Security Codes

Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use.
For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Handset Code

4-digit number (**9999** by default) required to use or change some handset functions.

- ✕ appears as digits are entered.
- If **Handset code is incorrect!** appears, enter again.
- Change Handset Code as needed (see **P.9-28**).

Centre Access Code

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to access Voicemail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

- Note** ►
- Write down Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password.
 - Do not reveal Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

- Tip** ► There are two other Security Codes. For details, see **P.1-6** "PIN1" and "PIN2".

Network Password

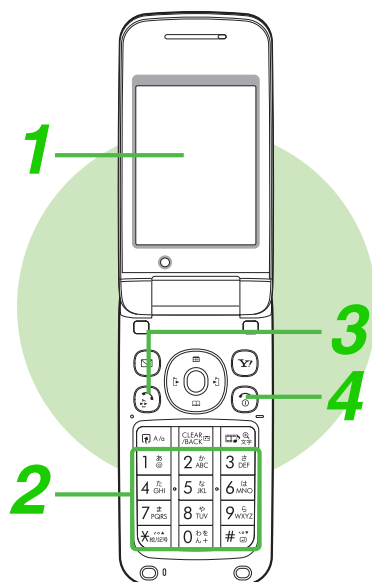
4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to restrict handset services. (see **P.13-7**).

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
- Change Network Password as needed (see **P.13-10**).

Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

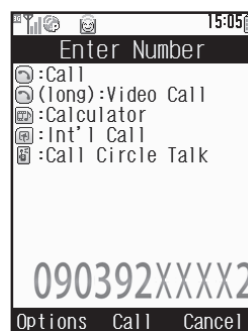
See **P.2-5** to initiate international calls from Japan, **P.2-17** for Voice Calls from outside Japan and **P.5-3** for Video Calls.



1 Confirm handset is on

- Check signal strength (see **P.1-9** **1**).
- Handset will not transmit when **out**, **✖**, **⌂** or **📶** appears (see **P.20-4 - 20-6**).

2 Enter a phone number



- Include dialling code for all numbers.
- To send/block Caller ID, enter a phone number and press **Options** ➔ Select **Show My ID** or **Hide My ID** ➔ Press **●**

3 Confirm the number and press

Correcting Numbers

- Use **⏮** to move cursor and press **CLEAR/BACK** to delete the digit above the cursor. Move cursor and press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Before moving cursor, press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press **📞** to hang up and try again.

Busy Numbers

- Press **📞** to end the call and try again later.

4 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close handset.

Calling Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

- **Save this number to your Phone Book?** appears after calls.
 - To save, choose **Yes** ➔ Press **●** ➔ Perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on **P.4-8**
 - To end without saving, choose **No** ➔ Press **●**
- To hide this confirmation, see **P.4-5** "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

- Note** ►
- Do not cover Microphone while talking.
 - Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna.
 - Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

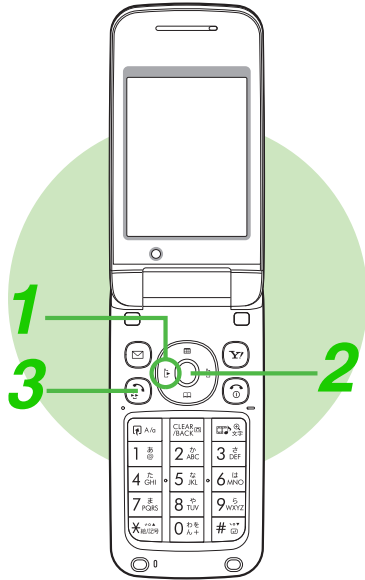
- Tip** ►
- Check Call Timers (see **P.2-14**) and Call Costs (see **P.2-15**).
 - For operations during a call (Loudspeaker, Mute, Hold, etc.), see **P.2-11- 2-12**.

Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Keypad Lock (see P.1-22)	Possible
Max Cost (see P.2-15)	Possible
Offline Mode (see P.2-20)	Not Possible
PIN Entry (see P.9-24)	Not Possible
Password Lock (see P.9-25)	Possible
Outgoing Calls (see P.13-8)	Possible

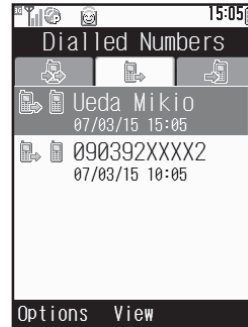
- Note** ► Emergency calls may not be possible when outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/ radio signals available in the country or handset settings.



Redial

Place calls from Dialed Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialed numbers are saved.

1 Press ()



Dialed numbers appear with date and time, most recent first.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Use to open Received Calls/All Calls.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

Handset dials the number.

Indicators

	Dialed Voice Call		Dialed Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		

- Tip** ►
- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears. (All records appear for Circle Talk.)
 - Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-13**.

Placing an International Call from Japan

- See **P.2-17** to initiate Voice Calls from outside Japan.
- Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

2 Press **Options**

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

4 Select a country and press

+ (international prefix symbol) and corresponding country code appear.

- To call unlisted countries, select **Enter Code** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press 

5 Press

- Tip** ➤
- To change the default international prefix, see **P.9-29** "Int'l Prefix".
 - To save frequently used country codes, see **P.9-29** "Country Codes".
 - To restrict outgoing international calls, see **P.13-7** "Call Barring".

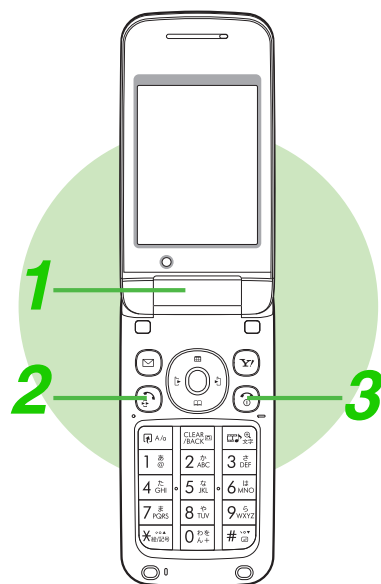
Quick Operations

- Enter a phone number ➔ Press  ➔ Select a country ➔ Press  ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5

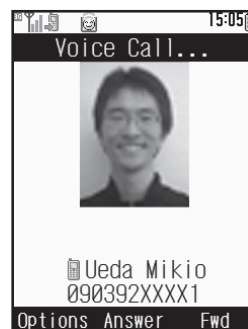
Direct Entry

- Press   for 1+ seconds (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter a phone number including the dialling code ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5
- Omit the first **0** of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

Incoming Call



1 When a call arrives, open handset



- Number appears when Caller ID is sent.
- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- To reject an incoming call, press **Options** while handset is ringing/vibrating ➔ Select **Reject** ➔ Press
- Standby returns; record appears in Received Calls.
- To place a caller on hold, press while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Press to answer the call on hold.
- Answering a Video Call: see **P.5-3**

- Tip** ➤
- When Caller ID is not sent, **Withheld** appears instead of the phone number.
 - Up to 30 received call records are saved (see **P.2-13**).
 - Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-10**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.
 - Change ringtone volumes/patterns and vibration patterns (see **P.9-14 - 9-16**).
 - To instantly mute ringer, press (handset open) or (handset closed) for 1+ seconds.

2 Press

When Any Key Answer (see **P.9-17**) is Active

- Press any of these keys to answer calls:

- , , , , ,

3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close handset.
- Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book
- **Save this number to your Phone Book?** appears after calls.
 - To save, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on **P.4-8**
 - To end without saving, choose **No** ➔ Press
- To hide this confirmation, see **P.4-5** "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

Redirecting a Call

■ Call Forwarding: see P.13-2

Press  **Fwd** to direct incoming call to a specified number.

■ Voicemail: see P.13-4

Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voicemail Centre.

Activate Missed Call Notification (see **P.13-5**) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

■ Answer Phone: see P.2-9

Record caller messages on handset.

Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-10**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.

Information

■ Information window opens for Missed Calls or Answer Phone messages.

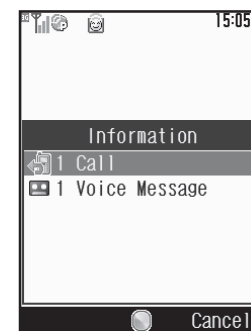
- Select **Call** and press  to see details (see **P.2-13**).
- Select **Voice Message** and press  to play recorded messages (see **P.2-10**).

■ Information window opens for other items as well. Select an item and press to open the corresponding window.

■ To open Information list, follow these steps.

Press  ➔ Select *Phone* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Information* ➔ Press 

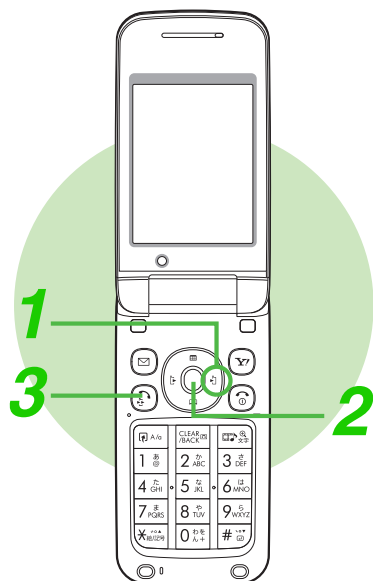
- To clear list, open Information list and press  **Options** ➔ Select **Reset** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 



Answering Calls with Headphones

■ Press Call Button for 1+ seconds to answer a call.

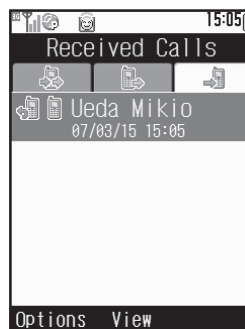
- To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.



Calling from Received Calls

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, number appears. Place calls directly to those numbers.

1 Press (Call)



Received numbers appear with date and time, most recent first.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Use to open Dialed Numbers/All Calls.

2 Select a record and press

Tip ►

- Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-13**.

3 Press

Handset dials the number.

■ Indicators

	Answered Voice Call		Rejected Voice Call
	Answered Video Call		Rejected Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		Missed Call Notification
	Missed Voice Call		Answer Phone Answered
	Missed Video Call		Forwarded to Voicemail Centre
	Missed Circle Talk Request		

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voicemail (see **P.13-4**) to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Voice Memo (see **P.2-12**).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.

Activating & Cancelling

Main Menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call/Video Call** (📞) ▶ **Answer Phone**

1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press ●

- To sample outgoing message, select **Outgoing Message** ▶ Press ●
- Press  to stop.

2 **Activating**

1 Choose **On** and press ●

- Press  to return to Standby (📞 appears). (📞 appears when messages are recorded.)

Cancelling

1 Choose **Off** and press ●

Tip ▶ Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds in Standby to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

Note ▶

- When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.
- Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
- In Manner, Drive or Original mode, respective Answer Phone setting (see **P.9-2**) takes priority.

When Answer Phone is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 - To answer calls, press  during recording (no message will be recorded).
 - When recording ends,  appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full after the recording, Answer Phone is cancelled and  appears.

Playing Messages

Main Menu ► Phone

1 Select **Play Messages** and press ●

Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

- Press ● to replay.
- Press  to stop playback.
- To skip a message, press ● **Next** or ●.
- To play the previous message, press ● twice during playback.
- To delete a message, press  **Delete** during playback ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

Note ► Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press  to answer a call.

Tip ► Alternatively, press  in Standby to play messages.

Earpiece Volume

- Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.

Press ● ► **Select Settings** ► Press ● ► Use ● to select **Call/Video Call** ► **Select Answer Phone** ► Press ● ► **Select Volume** ► Press ● ► **Select Link to Profile or Silent** ► Press ●

- For **Link to Profile**, current Earpiece Volume applies.

Answer Time

- Adjust ring time between 0 and 30 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).

Press ● ► **Select Settings** ► Press ● ► Use ● to select **Call/Video Call** ► **Select Answer Phone** ► Press ● ► **Select Answer Time** ► Press ● ► Enter time (00 - 30) ► Press ●

- To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter **00** for time ► Press ●
- Activation Time is **09** seconds by default.
- When Answer Phone and Voicemail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.

Example:

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

Ring time for Voicemail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

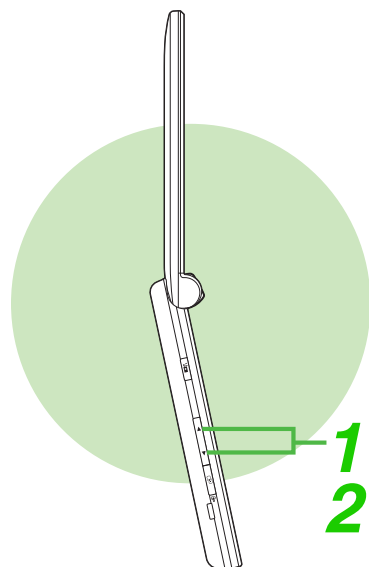
- If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode, incoming calls are handled by Voicemail or Call Forwarding.

Quick Recorder

- Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive. When a call arrives, follow these steps. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.

Press  **Options** ► **Select Record Message** ► Press ●

Engaged Call Operations



Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- To adjust Earpiece Volume in Standby, see **P.9-17**.
- Earpiece Volume is **Level 3** by default.

1 During a call, press ◀ or ▶

2 Press ◀ (up) or ▶ (down) to adjust volume

Voice Output

Loudspeaker

Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations

During a call, press ●.

■ To cancel, press ●.

Mute

Mute Microphone
Other party's voice is audible

During a call, press ☒ **Mute**.

■ To cancel, press ☒ **Unmute**.

Hold

Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not audible

■ Subscription to Call Waiting (see **P.13-5**) or Conference Call (see **P.13-6**) is required.

During a call, press ☒ **Options** ➔ **Select Hold** ➔ Press ●

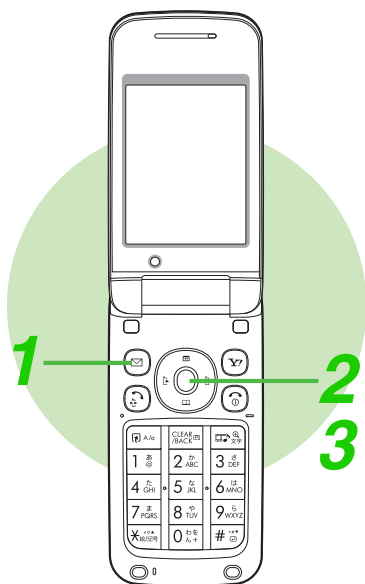
■ To cancel, press ☒ **Options** ➔ Select **Retrieve** ➔ Press ●

■ Alternatively, press ☒.

Touch Tones

■ Use Touch Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answerphone remotely.

- Use 0 - 9, *, and # to send Touch Tones.



Voice Memo

Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Voice Memo and Answer Phone (see **P.2-9**).

1 During a call, press **Options**

2 Select **Record** and press
Recording starts.

3 Press to stop

- Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)

Play

Play Voice Memos

Main Menu

► Phone

Select **Play Messages** ► Press

For details, see **P.2-10** "Playing Messages".

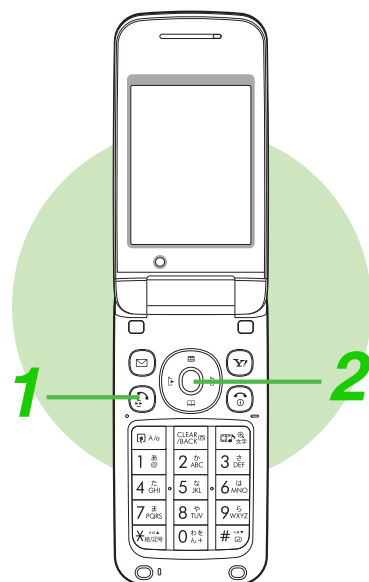
Other Engaged Call Operations

Open Phone Book Entry	Open Phone Book entries
	Press Options ► Select Phone Book List ► Press ► Select an entry ► Press
Save Phone Book Entry	Save the other party's number to Phone Book
	Press Options ► Select Phone Book List ► Press ► Press Options ► Select Add New Entry ► Press ► Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Open Message	Check received/sent/draft messages
	Press Options ► Select Messaging ► Press ► Select an item ► Press
Create Message	Create a new message
	Press Options ► Select Messaging ► Press ► Select Create Message or Create New SMS ► Press ► Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-6
Dial New Number	Call another number
	Press Options ► Select Dial New Number ► Press ► Enter a phone number ► Press
Enable/Disable DTMF	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call
	Press Options ► Select Disable DTMF or Enable DTMF ► Press

Tip ► To switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices during a call, see **P.10-8** "Sound Output".

Call Log

2



Open the following records:

All Calls	All dialled/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialled calls
Received Calls	All received calls

1 Press

All Calls opens.

Press to open others.

2 Select a record and press

Record details appear.

Tip ▶ Press to open All Calls during a call.

Delete

Delete records one at a time

Press ➔ Select a record ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Delete All

Delete all records

Press ➔ Open **All Calls, Dialled Numbers or Received Calls** ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Delete All** ➔ Press ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Tip ▶ To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see **P.4-8** "Saving from Call Log".

Using Call Log

Call

Place calls

Press ➔ Select a record ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Call** or **Video Call** ➔ Press

To edit numbers before dialling, select a record and press **Options** ➔ Select **Edit Before Call** ➔ Press ➔ Edit number ➔ Press (Long Press for Video Calls)

Create Message

Create messages

Press ➔ Select a record ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Create Message** ➔ Press ➔ Select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8 or on P.14-6

Call Timers & Data Counter

Call Timers

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time).

- Times for Dialed Calls and Received Calls appear separately.
- To show elapsed Call Time during a call, see **P.9-30** "Call Time Counter".

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

1 Select *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls* and press ●

2 Press ● to return to Call Timers menu

- Press 🏠 to return to Standby.

Tip ▶

- Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Clear Timers Reset Call Timers

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

Select *Clear Timers* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ●

Data Counter

Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Data Counter

1 Select *Last Data* or *All Data* and press ●

2 Press ● to return to Data Counter menu

- Press 🏠 to return to Standby.

Clear Counter Reset Data Counter

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Data Counter

Select *Clear Counter* ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ●

Call Costs

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls. To show Call Cost automatically after each call, see **P.9-30** "Display Call Cost".

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

1 Select **Last Call** or **All Calls** and press ●

2 Press ● to return to Call Costs menu

- Press ☏ to return to Standby.

Tip ▶

- Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

Clear Costs Reset Call Costs

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

Select **Clear Costs** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●

Cost Units

Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs

Default YEN 1

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs* ▶ *Cost Units*

Press ☒ **Edit** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter currency ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter conversion rate ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

Limit Call Costs

Max Cost

Set a limit of total call charges
When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

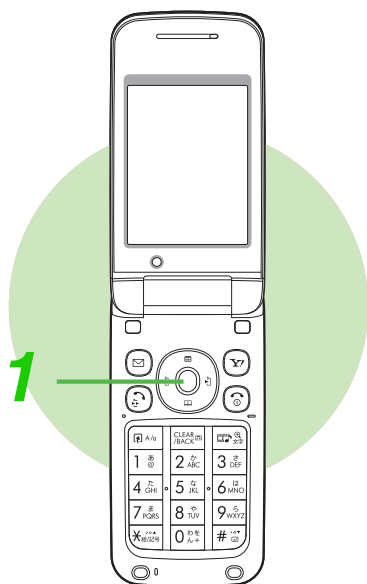
Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

Select **Max Cost** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ☒ **Set** ▶ Select **Set** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter the amount ▶ Press ●

- To cancel Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ☒ **Set** ▶ Select **Unset** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ●
- To change Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ☒ **Edit** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter the amount ▶ Press ●
- To check the remaining amount, select **Residual Credit** ▶ Press ●

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Outside Japan (International Roaming)



Switching Network Services

- **Auto** is set by default.
- Use **Auto** whenever possible.

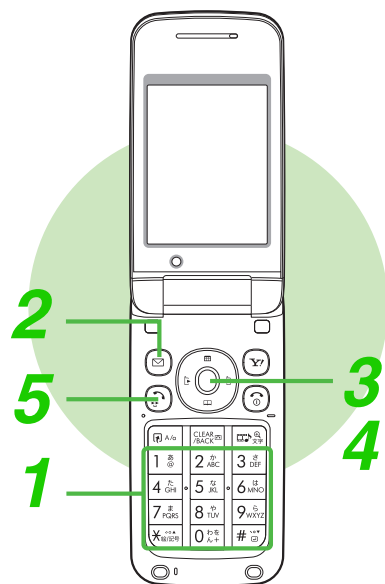
Auto	Sets Network by location (Network status) when selected and each time handset is turned on thereafter.
3G/GSM	Use in 3G or GSM service areas
3G	Use in 3G service areas
GSM	Use in GSM service areas

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Network Settings* (📶) ► *Select Service*

1 Select **Auto**, **3G/GSM**, **3G** or **GSM** and press **⏏**

Selected service is activated.

- Note** ►
- International roaming requires a separate contract. For service basics, see **Global Roaming Guide**, available in English via SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>). For up-to-date information, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
 - Download and print **Global Roaming Guide** to carry with you while travelling abroad.



Calling from Outside Japan

Use the same SoftBank handset number overseas.

Calling Other Countries

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

2 Press Options

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

- To call Japan, select **Call to Japan** ➔ Press ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5

4 Select a country and press

- + and country code are inserted before the phone number. The first 0 is omitted except when calling Italy (39). (+ indicates an outgoing international call.)

- To call unlisted countries, select **Enter Code** ➔ Press ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- Always select **日本 (JPN)** (or press for direct entry).

5 Press

Calling Japan via Quick Operation

- Enter a phone number ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 4

Direct Entry

- Press for 1+ seconds (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter a phone number including the dialling code ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5
 - Omit the first 0 of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

2 Press

Note ➤ In some areas, other parties may not be able to hear you and vice versa after returning to calls on hold (see P.2-11).

Tip ➤ Adding Country Codes

To save frequently used country codes, see P.9-29 "Country Codes". For more information, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-29).

Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theatres, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, lifts, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-Related Features

■ Manner Mode: see P.2-19

Press Manner Key to automatically mute all sounds and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

■ Vibration Mode: see P.9-15

Activate vibration for incoming transmission alerts.

■ Volume Settings: see P.9-14

When carrying handset in public, decrease or mute incoming transmission alerts or S! Application tones.

■ Offline Mode: see P.2-20

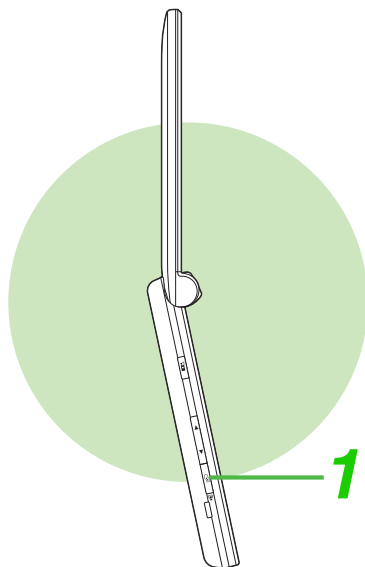
Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions without turning off handset power.

■ Answer Phone: see P.2-9

Handle incoming calls inappropriate/unsafe to answer.

■ Drive Mode: see P.9-2

Small Light flashes for incoming calls; if unanswered driving message plays and Answer Phone activates.



Activating & Cancelling

Activate/cancel Manner mode in Standby, while browsing the Internet or during calls, etc.

Activating

1 Press for 1+ seconds

 appears and Manner mode is set.

-  (Answer Phone),  (Silent) and  (Silent & Vibration) appear as set in Manner settings (see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings").

Cancelling

1 Press for 1+ seconds

 disappears and Manner mode is cancelled.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Swap Call (see **P.13-6**) beeps are audible.
 - Even in Manner mode, ringtone is audible from Headphones. Volume is fixed to **Level 1**.
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.
- Manner settings (see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings") apply to Answer Phone, ringtones, Vibration, etc.

- Tip** ►
- While Answer Phone is recording, caller's voice is audible from Earpiece.
 - To change Manner settings, see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings".

Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.

- Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions. Bluetooth®/infrared transmissions are available.
- Offline Mode is **Off** by default.

Activating

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Network Settings* (📶) ► *Offline Mode*

1 Choose **On** and press ●

📶 appears and Offline Mode is set.

Cancelling

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Network Settings* (📶) ► *Offline Mode*

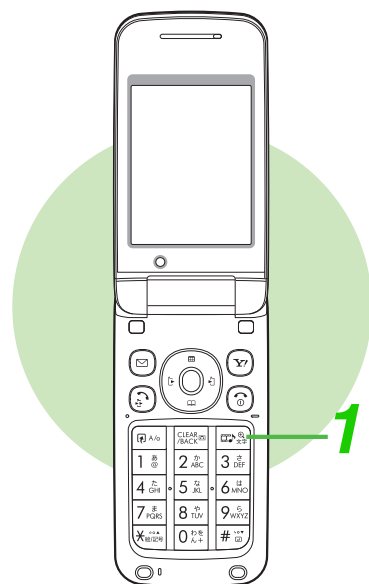
1 Choose **Off** and press ●

📶 disappears and Offline Mode is cancelled.

Tip ►

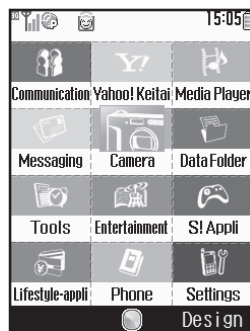
- When Offline Mode is set while an S! Application (see **P.16-2**) is paused, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press ● to enter Offline Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Offline Mode is cancelled.)
- Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Simple Menu

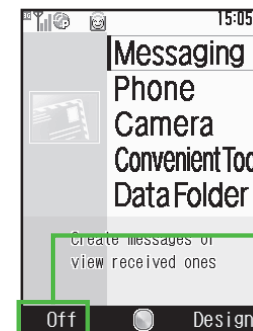


Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (see **P.2-22**).
- Fonts are enlarged while Simple Menu is active.



Standard Main Menu



Simple Main Menu

Activating/Cancelling Simple Menu

Activating

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

- Simple Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

Note ► Some menu items, function names, etc. differ from Standard Menu.

Tip

- Activate Simple Menu in Normal mode (see **P.9-2**). While Simple Menu is active, Drive and Original modes are not available.
- A message to end the corresponding function appears when Simple Menu is activated in the following cases:
 - Infrared transmission is in progress
 - S! Application is paused
 - Media Player is active (playing background music)
 - Bluetooth® is active

Cancelling

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

Simple Menu Operations

Menus

In Standby, press  to open Simple Main Menu.

Messaging	Received Msg.	See P.14-23
	Create Msg.	See P.14-7
	Drafts	See P.14-18
	Templates	See P.14-14
	Sent Messages	See P.14-23
	Unsent Msg.	See P.14-23
	Create SMS	See P.14-6
Phone	Ph. Book List	See P.4-2
	Add New Entry	See P.4-4
	Play Messages	See P.2-10
	Call VM	See P.13-4
	My Details	See P.4-19
	Speed Dial	See P.4-13
Camera	-	See P.6-2
Convenient Tool	Calendar	See P.12-2
	Alarms	See P.12-11
	Calculator	See P.12-15
	Assignment	Wallpaper See P.9-3
		Assign Tone See P.9-14
		Volume See P.9-14
	Hot Status	See P.19-4
	Circle Talk	See P.19-13
	Answer Phone	See P.2-9
	Simple Menu	See P.2-21
Data Folder	Pictures	See P.8-2
	DCIM	See P.8-2
	My Pictograms	See P.8-2
	Ring Tones	See P.8-2
	S! Appli	See P.16-2
	Music	See P.8-2
	Videos	See P.8-2

Data Folder	Lifestyle-appli	See P.17-3
	Books	See P.8-2
	CustomScreens	See P.9-9
	Flash®	See P.8-2
	Flash® Ringtones	See P.8-2
	Other Docs.	See P.8-2
	Memory Status	See P.8-2

Key Assignments

In Standby:

 (Long Press)	Switch to Standard Menu	See P.2-21
 (Long Press)	Turn handset on/off	See P.1-20
	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	See P.15-2
	Open Messaging menu	See P.14-2
 (Long Press)	Open S! Mail Composition window	See P.14-7
	Open Call Log (All Calls)	See P.2-13
	Open Call Log (Dialled No.)	See P.2-4
	Open Call Log (Received Calls)	See P.2-8
	Open Phone Book	See P.4-8
 (Long Press)	Create new Phone Book entry	See P.4-4
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Manner mode	See P.2-18
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Keypad Lock	See P.1-22
	Play Answer Phone messages	See P.2-10
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Answer Phone	See P.2-9

- While Simple Menu is active, shortcuts and some Quick Operations (see P.1-25) are disabled.

Text Entry

Character Selection

Use Kana and Pager (see **P.3-9**) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictograms. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.

Help

■ In a text entry window, press  **Options** ➔ **Select Help** ➔ Press 

Entry Modes

Follow these steps to change character entry mode.

1 Press 

2 Use  to select a mode and press 

- For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)



Current Entry Mode

- Available Modes:

漢	Kanji (hiragana)	A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
ア	Single-byte katakana	1	Single-byte number
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)		Character Codes
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)		

A and A appear in upper/lower case mode (see below).

Upper & Lower Case

■ In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press  to toggle between upper/lower case and lower case modes.

- Tip** ➤
- Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.
 - Some characters are not available for mail addresses, etc.

Text Entry

3-3

When entering characters, press  to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.)

Example: Enter り, then press  to return to あ.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1 あ 	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 (Space)	1	1
2 か 	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3 さ 	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4 た 	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5 な 	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6 は 	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7 ま 	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8 や 	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9 ら 	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0 わ 	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0 + ¹	0
	ゝ ・ Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List	ゝ ・ - ² Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List ³ (Symbol List → Log/History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List ³ (Symbol List → Log/ History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	⌘ P (Pause) ? - ⁴ Symbol List, Log/History, Pictogram List	_____
#	、 。 ⏎ (Line Break) ? ! (Space)		.. ⏎ (Line Break)?! (Space)	#	_____

¹ Press  for 1+ seconds to enter + (available for phone number entry).

²- is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

³Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.

⁴ $\times$, P (Pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.

Key Assignments (Continued)

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (Up) ⁵	Cursor Up			
	Conversion (Down) ⁶	Cursor Down ⚡ (Line Break)			
	Cursor Left				
	Cursor Right				
	Change Entry Mode				
	Toggle Case (for some characters)		Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower case)	_____	_____
 Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/ One Character
 Long Press	Delete before or after cursor				
	Re-convert ⁷ Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁸	Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁸			
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			_____
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion	_____			_____

⁵Cursor moves up except during conversion.

⁶Cursor moves down except during conversion.

⁷Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)

⁸Press once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using (Long Press).)

Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter 鈴木 to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Press 3 DEF twice

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.

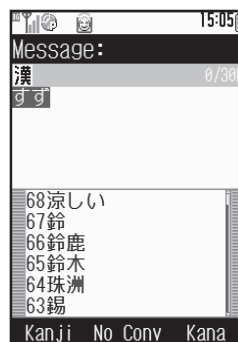


2 Press 3 DEF for 1+ seconds

- Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next hiragana assigned to it and advance cursor (before conversion).



3 Press 3 DEF three times and press *



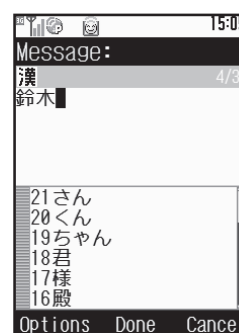
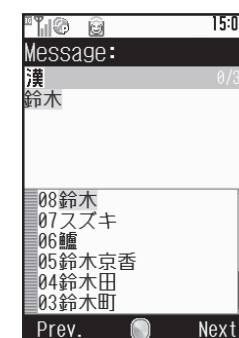
4 Press 2 ABC twice

- To enter unconverted hiragana, skip ahead to Step 6.

5 Press (convert) and use (select) to select a word

- The most recent selection appears first in the list.
- To see other suggestions, press [Envelope icon].
- Prev. or [Y] Next.
- To exit the list, press [CLEAR/BACK].
- To change segment, see P.3-6 "Segmenting Phrases".

6 Press (confirm)



Katakana Entry

- Switch to double or single-byte katakana mode to enter katakana. (Press  **Confirm** after entry.) Alternatively, enter hiragana then select katakana from the word suggestion list.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see **P.3-11 "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion"**.

Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

Predictive	Word suggestions change as up to five hiragana are entered
Previous Usage	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (see **P.3-13 "Optional Predictive Functions"**).
- To lower priority of particular types of words (names of people, places, etc.) in the word suggestion list, see **P.3-13 "Set Low Priority"**.

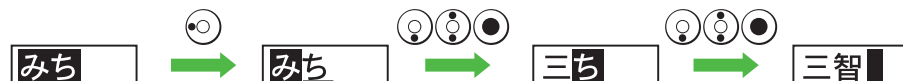
User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list. For details, see **P.9-19**.
 - In text entry windows, save entered words/phrases from Options.

Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press  after Step 5 on **P.3-5** to exit. Use  to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment みち into み and ち.



Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press .

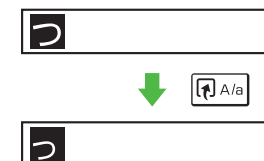
Example: To enter 西山大輔



Small Kana (っ, ッ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana あ, い, う, え, お, っ, や, ゆ and よ as well as small katakana.

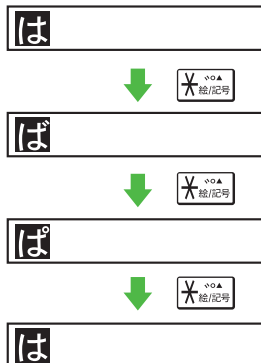
1 Enter a character and press .



Adding ` or °

1 Enter a character and press

- In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add ` to か (Ka) row, さ (Sa) row and た (Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add `, twice to add ° and three times to remove.



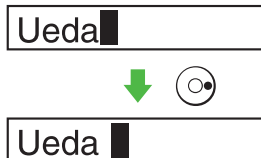
Tip ► In Single-byte Katakana Entry

- Press  once to add single-byte ` or twice for °.
- Press  to remove ` or °.

Space

1 Press

Alternatively, in kanji (hiragana), katakana or alphanumeric entry, press  six times for space.

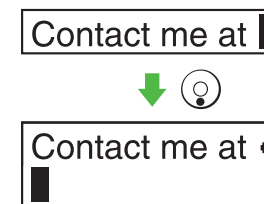


Line Break

Insert line breaks in text, Text Templates, etc.

1 Press at the end of text

- To insert line breaks in text, press  until ↓ appears, then press .



Undo & Recover

Cancel the previous conversion or recover deleted characters.

1 Press Options immediately after character entry

2 Select *Undo/Reverse Order* and press

Entering Alphanumerics

Enter alphanumerics in double or single-byte alphanumerics mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.



- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering **a** then **b**), press  first to move cursor.
- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press  to toggle between upper/lower and lower case modes.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see **P.3-11** "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictograms

Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

1 Press to open Log/History (Log/History is available in some entry modes; see P.3-3)

Recently used Symbols/Pictograms appear.

- — appears by default or when Log/History is deleted.
- To see Symbols, press ; toggle as follows: Symbol List(s) → Log/History.
- To see Pictograms, press ; toggles as follows: Pictogram Lists → Log/History.
 - Alternatively, press  repeatedly to scroll Symbols or Pictograms.
- To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, see P.14-8 (below Step 7).

2 Use to select one and press

- Repeat Step 2 to enter more.

3 Press a key (-) to exit list and enter the assigned character

- Alternatively, press  to exit list.

Tip ►

- Double-byte Symbols appear only in double-byte entry mode. (All Pictograms are double-byte.)
- Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log/History.
- Alternatively, enter **きごう** and press  (convert). Some Symbols can be selected.
- For available Pictograms, see P.20-16. While creating Arrange Mail (see P.14-11), My Pictograms (see P.8-2) downloaded via the Internet can also be used.
- Enter a descriptive word such as **はーと** or **はな** and press  (convert). Corresponding Pictograms can be selected.
- My Pictogram History is available while creating S! Mail (see P.14-7) or Arrange Mail (see P.14-11).

Clear Log/History

- In a text entry window, press  **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Clear History** ➔ Press  ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ Press 
 - To return to the text entry window, press  ➔ Press 

Emoticons

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Emoticons** and press 
 - Enter two digits (01 - 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.
- 3 Select an emoticon and press 

- Tip ►**
- For other emoticons, enter **かお** and press  (convert). Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん** and press  (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
 - Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see **P.3-13** "Optional Predictive Functions" (EmotionWordlink).

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Quick Address List** and press 
- 3 Select an extension and press 
 - Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.

Character Code

- 1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (see **P.20-10**)

Pager Code

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Input/Conversion** and press 
- 3 Select **Input Method** and press 
- 4 Select **Pager Code** and press 

Pager Code _ _ appears at the bottom.

 To switch to Kana Mode, select **Kana** ➔ Press 
- 5 Enter two digits (see **P.3-10**)
 - Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

Character Entry Modes

- In Pager Mode, toggle between entry modes as follows:

Press  ➔ Select **P**, **P**, **Pictogram**, **Symbols** or **Character Code** ➔ Press 

 - For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
 - To toggle between upper and lower case modes, press  ➔ Press  **P/p**

- Tip ►**
- Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.
 - To enter ` or ` , see Pager Code List on **P.3-10**.

■ Pager Code List

- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Grey background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	。	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				、	。					

*1 Press   to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Text Templates, etc.).

*2 Press   to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

-  and  are double-byte.

Single-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			*1
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ゝ	。	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				、	。					

Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

- 1 Enter reading in hiragana
- 2 Press  **Kanji**
- 3 Select a kanji and press 



One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: To enter 鈴木



- Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

- 1 Enter hiragana and press  **Kana**

- To enter **AM**, press   then  **Kana**.

- 2 Use  to select a word and press 

- Hiragana to Roman Letter Conversion (hiragana with ^ˆ or [˚] is converted to the same characters/Symbols):

あ	@	い	.	う	/	え	—	お	Space
か	A	き	B	<	C	け	Space	こ	Space
さ	D	し	E	す	F	せ	Space	そ	Space
た	G	ち	H	つ	I	て	Space	と	Space
な	J	に	K	ぬ	L	ね	Space	の	Space
は	M	ひ	N	ふ	O	へ	Space	ほ	Space
ま	P	み	Q	む	R	め	S	も	Space
や	T	ゆ	U	よ	V	—	—	—	—
ら	W	り	X	る	Y	れ	Z	ろ	Space
わ	,	を	.	ん	Space	— (Long Sound)	—	—	Space

- Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with ^ˆ or [˚] is converted to the same numbers):
 - あ (A) row...1 ■ か (Ka) row...2 ■ さ (Sa) row...3 ■ た (Ta) row...4
 - な (Na) row...5 ■ は (Ha) row...6 ■ ま (Ma) row...7 ■ や (Ya) row...8
 - ら (Ra) row...9 ■ わをん— (Long Sound)...0

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words.

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter 微妙

Normal Conversion	6 は MNO	6 は MNO	✕ ひら/記号	(び)	7 ま PORS	7 ま PORS	(み)
	8 や TUV	8 や TUV	8 や TUV	8 や TUV	8 や TUV	8 や TUV	(よ)
	1 あ	1 あ	1 あ	(う)	⊙ (convert)		
Quick Conversion	6 は MNO	✕ ひら/記号	(ば)	7 ま PORS	(ま)	8 や TUV	(や)
	⊙ (convert)					1 あ	(あ)

1 Enter hiragana and press ⊙

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use ⊙ to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.

■ To cancel Quick Conversion, press CLEAR BACK ➡ Press ⊙ for normal conversion

2 Use ⊙ to select a word and press ●

Note ▶ Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

Tip ▶ The most recent selection (mostly nouns) appears first.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (あいうえお for あ) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When あ is entered

5:00 - 10:59	11:00 - 16:59	17:00 - 22:59	23:00 - 4:59
朝一番 朝帰り 行ってきます いってらっしゃい ⋮	あちい～ 後でね いただきま～す♪ 移動中 ⋮	遊ぼう 明日 急いで行くよ 今どこ？ ⋮	アウチ！！ ありがとう いえーい！！ 行こうね ⋮

- Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- If Clock is unset, only words for 11:00 - 16:59 are available.

One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recent selection appears first.

Example: You entered あたあさわ and selected お父さん last time.



Conversion Settings

Optional Predictive Functions

Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink

Default On (all)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔
 Press ➔ **Select Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **On** or **Off** ➔ Press

Set Low Priority

Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔
 Press ➔ **Select Set Low Priority** ➔ Press ➔
 Select an item ➔ Press ➔ Press **OK**

- To select multiple items, select and press for each item before pressing **OK**.

Reset Learning

Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔ Press ➔
 ➔ **Select Reset Learning** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

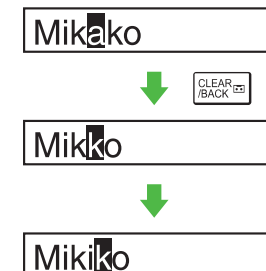
- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

Editing Characters

Deleting & Replacing

1 Use to select a character and press

- The highlighted character is deleted.
- Place cursor at the end of text and press for 1+ seconds to delete all text. When cursor is located amidst a block of text, characters on and after cursor are deleted.



2 Enter another character

Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Options** appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another. (My Pictograms, etc. copied from Arrange Mail Composition window may not be pasted.)

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Copy** or **Cut** and press

3 Use to select the first character of text and press

Start point is set.

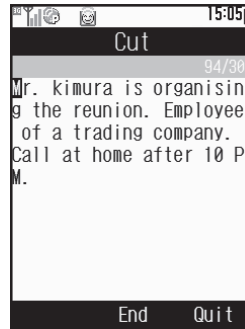
 To change the start point, press  **Quit**.

4 Select the end point and press

5 Open text paste target window

6 Press **Options**

7 Select *Paste* and press



Cut



Deleting Text On and After Cursor

1 Select the first character of text

2 Press **Options**

3 Select *Cursor Position* and press

4 Select *Delete Posterior* and press

Jump to Top or End

■ In a text entry window, press  **Options** ➔ Select *Cursor Position* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Jump to End* or *Jump to Top* ➔ Press 

Additional Functions

Copying from Phone Book

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows. Select from name, phone numbers, mail addresses, Category, postal address, homepage, Note, and Birthday.

1 Press **Options**

- Move cursor to target location beforehand.

2 Select *Advanced* and press

3 Select *Phone Book* and press

4 Open a Phone Book entry or *My Details*

5 Use to select an item and press

Using Text Templates

Insert text saved in Text Templates (see **P.12-26**) into text entry windows.

- 1** Press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Text Templates* and press 
- 3** Select *Call Templates* and press 
- 4** Select text and press 

Text is inserted.

Saving to Text Templates

- Follow these steps to save text in text entry windows to Text Templates.

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Text Templates* ➔ Press 
➔ Select *Save Templates* ➔ Press  ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press  ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press 

- Enter up to 1,536 characters.
- Not available while creating Arrange Mail.

Changing Font Size

- 1** Press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Advanced* and press 
- 3** Select *Font Size* and press 
- 4** Select a size and press 

Tip ➤ Setting applies to *Editor* Font Size in Display Font Settings (see **P.9-4**).

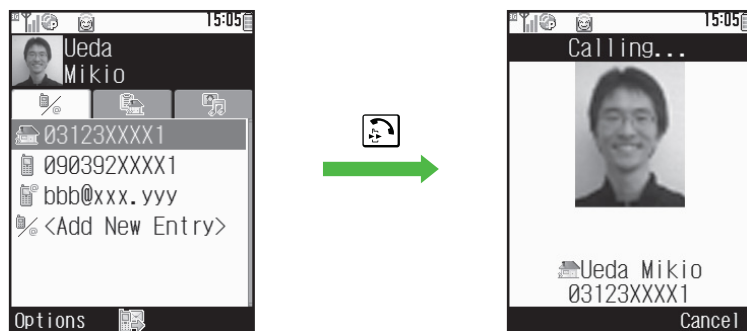
Phone Book

Overview

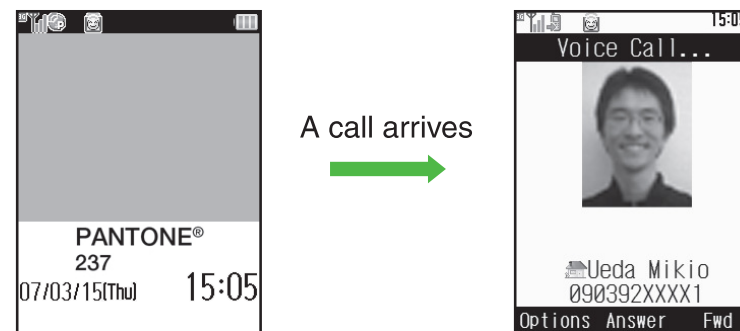
Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

- Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.
- Set ringtone/ringvideo by caller/sender, sort entries into Categories, etc. See **P.4-3** for more about Phone Book entry items.

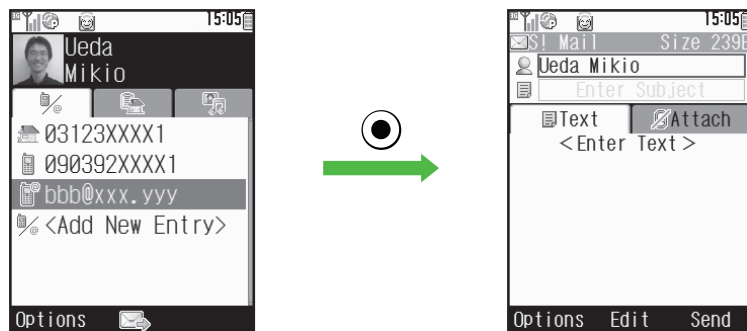
■ Dialling from Phone Book



■ When a Call Arrives



■ Sending SMS/S! Mail messages from Phone Book



Note ► Back-up Important Information

When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered data.

Service Dial

- Dial service dial numbers saved on compatible USIM Cards to use services.

Press **⇒ Select Phone** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select Service Dial No.** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select service** **⇒ Press**

- For details, contact the service providers.

Tip ► Use Phone Book Lock (see **P.9-26**) to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information.

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 750 entries in handset Phone Book; USIM Card Phone Book entry limit varies according to card specifications.

Item	Description	Item	Description
Last Name:	Enter up to 32 characters. (Select Name: when saving to USIM Card.)	Homepage: ¹	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 bytes.
First Name:		Note: ¹	Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.
Reading:	Enter up to 64 characters.	Birthday: ¹	Enter birth date
Add Phone Number:	Enter up to three numbers on handset/two on USIM Card (32 digits each)	Picture: ^{1, 2}	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/ mail
Add Email Address:	Enter up to three addresses on handset/one on USIM Card (128 single-byte alphanumerics each)	Tone/Video for Voice Call: ¹	Set ringtone/ringvideo or Vibration by caller/ sender
		Tone/Video for Video Call: ¹	
Category:	Sort entries into 16 Categories (11 on some USIM Cards). Category names can be changed. Set ringtone/ringvideo and Vibration by Category (handset only).	Tone/Video for New Message: ¹	
		Vibration for Incoming Call: ¹	
Address: ¹	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/ number (64 characters)	Vibration for New Message: ¹	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries
		Secret: ¹	

¹Not supported on USIM Card.

²Image may not appear while an S! Application is active, etc.

Note ► Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and character entry limits or number of Categories may be lower. Also, the number of phone numbers or mail addresses per entry may be lower.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.

For other items, see **P.4-5 - 4-7**.

Storage media is set to handset (**Phone**) by default.

Main Menu ► Phone

1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

Phone Book Details appears.

■ If storage media confirmation appears, select **To Phone** or **To USIM** ► Press

2 Select **Last Name:** and press

3 Enter last name and press

4 Select **First Name:** and press

5 Enter first name and press

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

• To correct reading, see **P.4-7**.

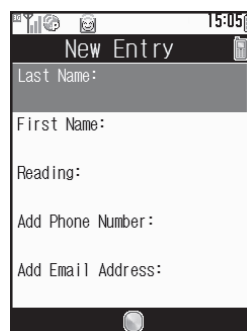
6 Select **Add Phone Number:** and press

7 Enter a phone number and press

• Include dialling code for landline numbers.

8 Select an icon and press

• To save additional phone numbers, repeat Steps 6 - 8.



Phone Book
Details

9 Select **Add Email Address:** and press

10 Enter a mail address and press

11 Press

12 Select an icon and press

• To save additional mail addresses, repeat Steps 9 - 12.

13 Press **Save**

Note ► To save an entry, enter at least one of the following: a) last name; b) first name; c) phone number; or d) mail address.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

■ Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Storage Media

■ Follow these steps to set default storage media for new entries.

Press ► Select **Phone** ► Press ► Select **Ph.Book Settings** ► Press ► Select **Save New Entry** ► Press ► Select **Phone, USIM Memory or Ask Each Time** ► Press

- **Phone** is set by default.
- For **Ask Each Time**, select storage media for each new entry.

Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers

- Follow these steps to show/hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers.

Press ➔ **Select Phone** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Ph.Book Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select New Number Prompt** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Incoming Call or Outgoing Call** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Both are **On** by default.

Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo

Select ringtones or ringvideos for calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book.

- Select from preset patterns or use the following melody or video files in Data Folder.
 - Files in Ring Songs·Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
 - Files in Videos folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
- Save files to Data Folder (Videos) before assigning video.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

1 Select form **Tone/Video for Voice Call: to Tone/Video for New Message:** and press

2 Select **Assign Tone** and press

- To cancel assigned tone/video, select **Remove Tone/Video** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

3 Ringtone

1 Select **Preset Sounds, Ring Songs·Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones** and press

Ringvideo

1 Select **Videos** and press

4 Select a file and press

- For **Preset Sounds**, select a tone ➔ Press

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

- After Step 4, select **Tone/Video for New Message:** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Duration** ➔ Press ➔ **Enter time** ➔ Press

Note

- If source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved to another handset/Memory Card folder (or is copy protected and licence expires), Sounds & Alerts (see P.9-14 "Ringtone/videos") setting applies.
- To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.

Personal Vibration

Set handset vibration for calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

- 1** Select **Vibration for Incoming Call: or Vibration for New Message:** and press 
- 2** Select **Switch On/Off** and press 
- 3** Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** and press 
 - **Link to Sound:** Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.
- 4** Select **Vibration Pattern** and press 
- 5** Select a pattern and press 
- 6** Press 

Personal Picture

Save an image to each Phone Book entry; saved image appears for calls/mail from phone numbers/mail addresses saved in that entry.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

- 1** Select **Picture:** and press 
 -  To cancel saved image, select **Remove Picture** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
- 2** **Selecting from Data Folder**
 - 1** Select **Assign Picture** and press 
 - 2** Select an image and press 
- Capturing New Image**
 - 1** Select **Take Picture** and press 
 - 2** Frame image on Display and press 

Captured image appears.

- 3** Press 

- Note** ➤
- Setting is cancelled when source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved. (Similarly, if source file is copy protected and licence expires.)
 - To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.
 - Images may not appear for incoming calls while messaging with an S! Application paused.

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

1 Select **Secret:** and press 

2 Choose **On** and press 

Unlock Temporarily

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.

Press  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 

- Secret entries are hidden next time Phone Book is opened.

- Note** ➤
- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27) to open Secret entries.
 - To cancel Secret, activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27) and choose **Off** in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see P.4-10 "Editing Phone Book Entries".
 - Secret entries do not appear in Standby Window or Hot Status member list.

Other Phone Book Entry Items

- For descriptions of each item, see P.4-3.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

Reading	Select Reading: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter reading ➔ Press  ➔ Press 
Category	Select Category: ➔ Press  ➔ Select a Category ➔ Press 
Address	Select Address: ➔ Press  ➔ Select Postal Code: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter postal code ➔ Press  ➔ Select Country: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press  ➔ Select State/Province: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press  ➔ Select City: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press  ➔ Select Street & Number: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter street name/number ➔ Press  ➔ Press  OK
Homepage	Select Homepage: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter URL ➔ Press  ➔ Press 
Note	Select Note: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter text ➔ Press 
Birthday	Select Birthday: ➔ Press  ➔ Enter date ➔ Press 

Saving from Call Log

- 1 Use  to open Dialed Numbers/Received Calls
- 2 Use  to select a record and press  **Options**
- 3 Select **Save Number** and press 
- 4 **New Entry**

- 1 Select **As New Entry** and press 

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

Add to Existing Entry

- 1 Select a Phone Book entry and press 

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

Note ► **Withheld** records cannot be saved. New numbers cannot be saved to handset Phone Book entries with three phone numbers or USIM Card entries with two phone numbers.

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ► **Phone** ► **Manage Entries**

- 1 Select **Memory Status** and press 

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.

■ Press  to return.

Using Phone Book

Dialling from Phone Book

Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27).
- To search by other methods, see P.4-9.

- 1 Press 

- 2 Use  to specify katakana row

- Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.

- 3 Use  to select an entry and press 

Phone Book entry opens.

(Window Description: see P.4-9)

- For entries with multiple numbers, use  to select one.

- 4 Press 

Handset dials the number.

- For other options, press  ► Select an option ► Press 



Switching Between Handset & USIM Card

- Press ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Ph.Book Settings**
 ➔ Press ➔ Select **Select Phone Book** ➔ Press ➔
Select Phone, USIM Memory or Both ➔ Press
 • **Phone** is set by default.
 • For **Both**, entries in both storage media appear.

Phone Book Search Methods

By Reading	Shows entries that start with specified Reading
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

By a-ka-sa-ta-na is set by default.

Main Menu ➔ **Phone** ➔ **Ph.Book Settings** ➔ **Sort Entries**

1 Select **By Reading**, **By Category** or **By a-ka-sa-ta-na** and press

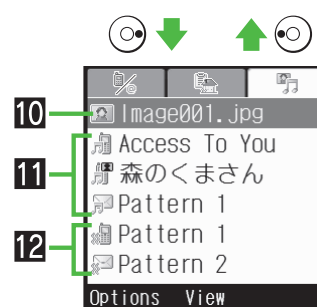
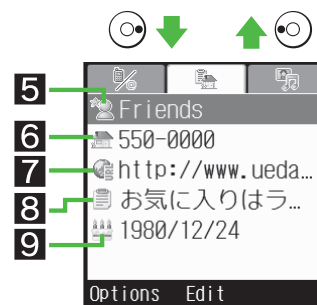
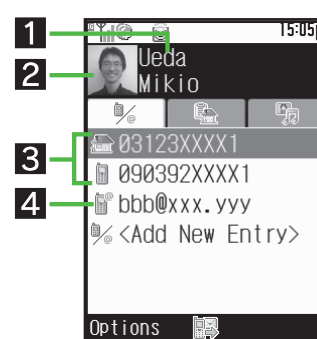
- Dialling Methods:

By Reading	Enter Reading ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press
By Category	Select a Category ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Use to specify a row ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press

For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press .

Tip ➔ In Standby, press and follow the steps above.

Window Description



- 1 Name
- 2 Image Set for Picture
- 3 Phone Number
- 4 Mail Address
- 5 Category Name
- 6 Address
- 7 Homepage
- 8 Note
- 9 Birthday
- 10 Name of Image Set for Picture
- 11 Ringtone/Ringvideo Settings
- 12 Vibration Settings
- 13 Secret Status

Tip ➔ To see details or use saved information, select an item and press . To add information, select an item in angle brackets (<Add New Entry>, etc.) and press .

Editing Phone Book Entries

To edit Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27).

Correction/Change

- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Edit** and press 
- 4** Select an item and press 
 - Edit contents.
 - See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (see P.4-4 - 4-7).
 - Edit Reading after editing names.
- 5** Press  when finished
 - To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.
 -  To cancel, press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
- 6** Press  **Save**
 - The entry is overwritten.

Copying Phone Book Entries

Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card. USIM Card does not support some Phone Book entry items (see P.4-3). Those items are deleted when Phone Book entries are copied from handset.

One Entry

- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Manage Entries** and press 
- 4** **Handset to USIM Card**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to USIM** and press 
 - 2** Choose **Yes** and press 
- USIM Card to Handset**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to Phone** and press 

All Entries

If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be copied all at once.

Main Menu ➔ **Phone** ➔ **Manage Entries** ➔ **Copy All**

- 1** Select **USIM to Phone** or **Phone to USIM** and press 
- 2** Choose **Yes** and press 

Deleting Phone Book Entries

One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select **Delete** and press 
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press 

Tip ► The source files remain in Data Folder, even when deleting entries containing melodies, video or images set for incoming calls/mail or Picture.

All Entries

Main Menu ► Phone ► Manage Entries ► Delete All

- 1 Select **Phone Entries, USIM Entries or Both Entries** and press 
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press 
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press 

Category Settings

Customise Category options; create new Category names.

Changing Category Name

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

- 1 Use  to select handset or USIM
- 2 Select a Category and press 
 - **No Category** (on handset) cannot be renamed.
- 3 Select **Edit Name** and press 
 - To change icons, select **Change Icon** ► Press  ► Select an icon ► Press  (Omit the next steps.)
- 4 Enter name
 - Enter up to 16 characters on handset; USIM Card character entry limit varies according to card specifications.
- 5 Press 
 - Repeat Steps 1 - 5 for other Categories.

Customising Handset Responses

Set ringtone/ringvideo or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by Category.

Category settings for incoming calls/mail are not available for Categories on USIM Card.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

- 1** Use  to select handset
- 2** Select a Category and press  **Options**
- 3** Select *Assign Ringtone* or *Assign Vibration* and press 
- 4** Select an item and press 
 - See the corresponding procedure for each setting.
 - Ringtone/ringvideo: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo" on **P.4-5**
 - Vibration: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Vibration" on **P.4-6**

Note ► Personal ringtone/ringvideo and Vibration settings (see **P.4-5 - 4-6**) take priority.

Contact Groups

Create Contact Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time (see "Contact Groups" in Step 4 on **P.14-7**).

Creating Contact Groups

Create up to 20 Contact Groups.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups ► <Add New Group>

- 1** Enter a Group name and press 

Saving Group Members

Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups

- 1** Select a Group and press 
- 2** Select *Assign New Entry* and press 
- 3** Select an entry and press 
 - For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ► Press 
 - To add other numbers/mail addresses, repeat Steps 2 - 3.

Editing Contact Groups

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups

- 1** Select a Group and press  **Options**

2 Select *Edit Name* and press ●

3 Enter name and press ●

- Enter up to 16 characters.

4 Choose *Yes* and press ●

Deleting Groups

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups

1 Select a Group and press ☐ Options

2 Select *Delete* and press ●

3 Choose *Yes* and press ●

4 Enter Handset Code and press ●

Editing Group Members

Changing Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups ► Open a Group

1 Select a member and press ☐ Options

2 Select *Re-assign Entry* and press ●

3 Select an entry and press ●

- For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use ⓘ to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ► Press ●

4 Choose *Yes* and press ●

Deleting Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Contact Groups ► Open a Group

1 Select a member and press ☐ Options

2 Select *Remove Entry* and press ●

3 Choose *Yes* and press ●

Tip ► Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

Speed Dial List

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialling.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Speed Dial List

1 Select from 0 to 9 and press ●

2 Select an entry and press ●

- For entries with multiple numbers, use ⓘ to select one ► Press ●

- To overwrite existing number, choose *Yes* ► Press ●

Saving from Phone Book

- Open a Phone Book entry and select a phone number ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Add Speed Dial** ➔ Press  ➔ Select from  to  ➔ Press 
 - To overwrite existing number, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

Note ➤ Saved numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source entry is deleted.

Tip ➤ Use Headphones with Call Button to call the number saved in Speed Dial .

Speed Dial

1 Press a key (  -  )

2 Press 

Handset dials the number. (Name appears if saved.)

- Alternatively, select a name from Speed Dial List and press .
- To place Video Calls, press  for 1+ seconds. (Speed Video Call)

Delete

Delete entries one at a time

Main Menu ➤ *Phone ➔ Speed Dial List*

Select an entry ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

Tip ➤ Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.

Clear All

Return Speed Dial List to default setting

Main Menu ➤ *Phone ➔ Speed Dial List*

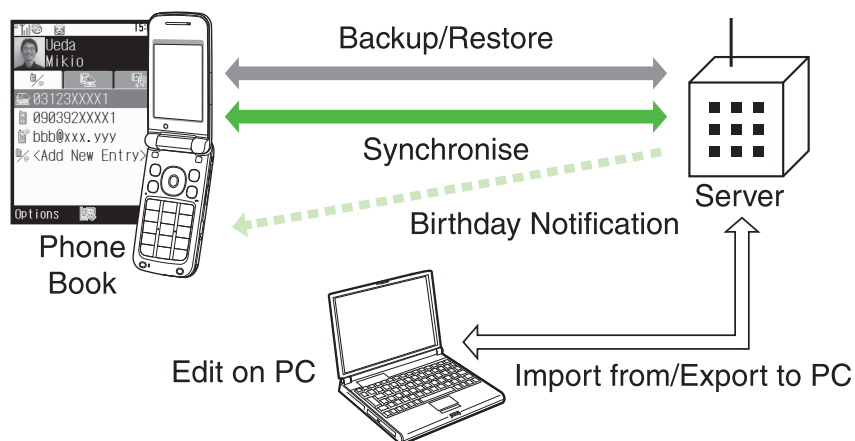
Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Clear All** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

Using Headphones with Call Button

- In Standby, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in Speed Dial .
 - To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

S! Address Book (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (see **P.4-16**).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online (<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/support/useful/sab/>).
- Save birthday information to SAB; use a PC to activate Birthday Notification online to receive SMS reminders.

Note ► Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronise) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ²
Synchronise	Normal	Synchronise Phone Book and SAB ³
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset

¹ Any existing SAB content is deleted.

² Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³ If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴ Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵ Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.

- Handset phone number serves as User ID.



Save User ID & Password

See P.4-17 for procedures.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

- Using sync commands incurs transmission fees.

Tip ► If User ID and Password SMS does not arrive, dial 157 for Customer Service or follow these steps:

Press ► Select **設定・申込** (My SoftBank)
 ► Press ► Select **English** ► Press ►
 Select **Password confirmation for S! Address Book** ► Press

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronisable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting, **Normal**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Normal**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronisation reflects lower limit.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**

SAB content remains as last saved.

- **Other 3G Handsets**

Service contract and SAB content remain (accessible via PC).

- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**

Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

Availability

SAB is only accessible within Japan.

Saving User ID & Password

After completion of contract, User ID and Password arrive via SMS. Save them on handset to activate SAB.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book ▶ Sync Settings

- 1** Select **User Settings** and press ●
- 2** **User ID**
 - 1** Select **User ID** and press ●
 - 2** Enter handset number and press ●
- Password**
 - 1** Select **Password** and press ●
 - 2** Enter Password and press ●
- 3** Press ☐ **Save**

Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book

- 1** Select **Backup** and press ●
- 2** Choose **Yes** and press ●
- 3** Enter Handset Code and press ●
Handset connects to the Server and Backup starts.
• After Backup, details appear.
☐ To cancel, press ☐ **Cancel** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●
- 4** Press ● to return

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book

- 1** Select **Restore** and press ●
- 2** Choose **Yes** and press ●
- 3** Enter Handset Code and press ●
Handset connects to the Server and Restore starts.
• After Restore, details appear.
☐ To cancel, press ☐ **Cancel** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●
- 4** Press ● to return

Synchronising Phone Book

Manual Synchronisation

- For details, see the table on **P.4-15**.
- If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronisation is performed via **Normal** regardless of selection.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

1 Select **Normal**, **Sync from Client** or **Sync from Server** and press ●

2 Choose **Yes** and press ●

3 Enter Handset Code and press ●

Handset connects to the Server and Synchronisation starts.

- After Synchronisation, details appear.

To cancel, press **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

4 Press ● to return

Auto Synchronisation

- Save User ID and Password beforehand.
- Auto Sync Settings is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings

1 Select **Auto Sync Settings** and press ●

2 Select **Set On/Off** and press ●

3 Choose **On** and press ●

4 Enter Handset Code and press ●

Set Frequency

Select Auto Sync frequency

Default Every Sun. 00:00

Main Menu

► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings ►
Auto Sync Settings ► Set Frequency

Every Month

Select **Every Month** ► Press ● ► Enter date ►

Press ● ► Enter time ► Press ●

Every Week

Select **Every Week** ► Press ● ► Select a day of the week ► Press ● ► Enter time ► Press ●

Every Day

Select **Every Day** ► Press ● ► Enter time ► Press ●

Set Sync Mode

Select Auto Sync command

Default Normal

Main Menu

► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings ►
Auto Sync Settings ► Set Sync Mode

Select a command ► Press ●

Opening Log

View result of Backup, Restore or Synchronisation.

Main Menu ► Phone ► *S! Address Book*

1 Select **View Log** and press ●

■ Press ● to return.

My Details

Opening My Details

Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card).
Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, personal data, etc.

Main Menu ► Phone

1 Select **My Details** and press ●

- My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (see **P.4-9**).

2 Press ☎ to exit

Tip ► Exchange My Details via Bluetooth® (see **P.10-2**) or infrared (see **P.10-10**) with compatible devices.

Edit/Add Details

Edit/add My Details

Main Menu ► Phone ► *My Details*

Press ☐ **Options** ► Select **Edit/Add Details** ► Press ●
► Select an item ► Press ●

- For more, see **P.4-4**.

Note ► Phone number in **Tel 1**: cannot be changed.

Delete

Clear My Details

Main Menu ► Phone ► *My Details*

Press ☐ **Options** ► Select **Reset My Details** ► Press ●
► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

Note ► Phone number in **Tel 1**: remains.

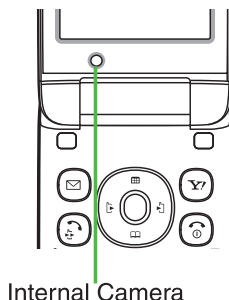
Video Call

Not Available for 813SH Users

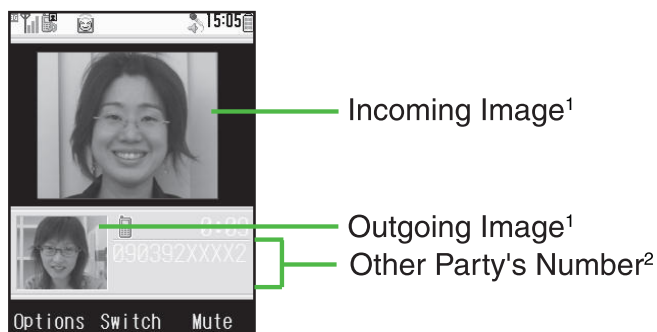
Getting Started

Communicate with another party using live video images.

- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.



Window Description



¹Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (see **P.5-5** "Switch Images").

²Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Depending on the other party's handset specifications or settings, incoming image may appear small or not at all.
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use Headphones to reduce noise.
- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (see **P.5-5, 5-7**) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use Headphones.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.
- Use AC Charger during Video Call to avoid battery exhaustion.

Initiating a Video Call

1 Enter a phone number

2 Press  **Options**

3 Select **Video Call** and press 

When the call is answered, incoming image appears.

- Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)

■ For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

4 Press  to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Tip ►

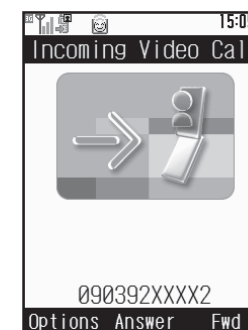
- Enter a phone number (or select a record from Call Log) and press  for 1+ seconds to initiate a Video Call.
- To initiate a Video Call from Phone Book, see P.4-8. To select a record from Call Log, see P.2-13.



Answering a Video Call

1 When a Video Call arrives, open handset

Incoming Video Call appears.



2 Answer with Video Image

1 Press  **Answer**

2 Choose **Yes** and press 

Internal Camera image is sent.

■ For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

Answer with Voice Only

1 Press  **Answer**

2 Choose **No** and press 

- Outgoing image is suppressed. (Video Call charges apply.)

■ For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

3 Press  to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Tip ► If image is not selected within five seconds of answering Video Call, outgoing image is not sent.



Rejecting Video Calls

- When a Video Call arrives, press [Options] → Select **Reject** → Press [End Call]

Redirecting Video Calls

- When a Video Call arrives, press [V] [Fwd].

Placing Callers on Hold

- When a Video Call arrives, press [Hold] or follow these steps.
Press [Options] → Select **Hold** → Press [End Call]
 - To answer the call on hold, press [End Call] → Choose **Yes** or **No** → Press [End Call]
- Callers placed on hold receive Hold Guidance Picture; Microphone is muted.

Note ► Loudspeaker (see P.5-5, 5-7) is temporarily cancelled when receiving Video Calls in Manner mode. To reactivate, set to **Loudspeaker On** during a call.

Engaged Video Call Operations

Camera Picture

Change outgoing image

Default Internal Camera

During a call, press [Camera].

- Image toggles as follows: External Camera image → Alternative Image → Internal Camera image.
- Press [Camera] to toggle image in reverse order.
- To change Alternative Image during a call, press [Options] → Select **Settings** → Press [End Call] → Perform from "Select **Alternative Image**" in "Camera Picture" on P.5-6

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels)

Default Level 3

During a call, press [Left Arrow] or [Right Arrow] → Press [Left Arrow] (up) or [Right Arrow] (down) to adjust level

- Each press changes volume by one level.
- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Mute

Mute Microphone

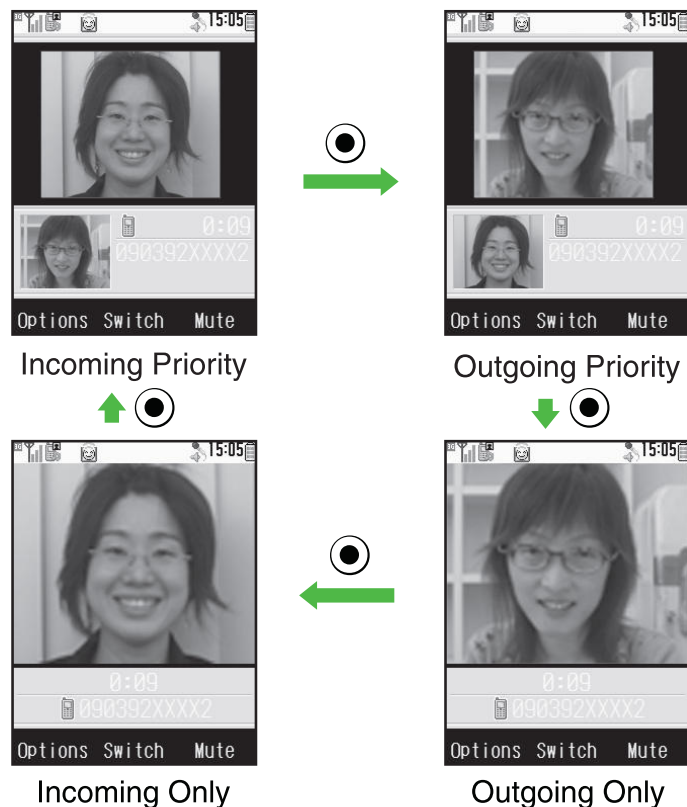
During a call, press [V] [Mute].

- To cancel, press [V] [Unmute].

Switch Images Change incoming/outgoing image size/position

During a call, press .

- Incoming Priority (incoming image appears larger) is set when initiating Video Calls.
- Images toggle as shown below.



Note ► Outgoing image appears on other party's handset even when Incoming Only is active.

Loudspeaker Cancel or activate Loudspeaker

During a call, press  **Options** ► **Select Loudspeaker Off or Loudspeaker On** ► **Press** .

- Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when Manner mode is activated during calls.

Hold

Pause live voice/image transmissions
Send Hold Guidance Picture

During a call, press  **Options** ► **Select Hold** ► **Press** .

To resume, press  **Retrve**.

Open Phone Book

Open/save Phone Book entries or My Details

Opening Phone Book

During a call, press  **Options** ► **Select Open Phone Book** ► **Press**  ► **Select an entry (or My Details)** ► **Press** .

- **My Details** appears only when **Sort Entries** is set to **By Reading** or **By Category** (see "Phone Book Search Methods").

Saving Entries

During a call, press  **Options** ► **Select Open Phone Book** ► **Press**  ► **Press**  **Options** ► **Select Add New Entry** ► **Press**  ► **Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4**

Transfer Audio

Select sound output when a handsfree device, etc. is used for telephony

During a call, press  **Options** ► **Select Transfer Audio** ► **Press**  ► **Select To Phone or To Bluetooth** ► **Press** .

Mirror Image

Activate or cancel reversed Internal Camera image

During a call, press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Mirror Image** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **On** or **Off** ➔ Press

- External Camera image, Alternative Image and incoming images cannot be reversed.
- Mirror Image is **On** when initiating Video Calls.

Exposure

Adjust outgoing image brightness
(5 levels: -2 to +2)

During a call, press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Exposure** ➔ Press ➔ Use to adjust level ➔ Press

- Alternative Image appearance is fixed.
- Exposure is **Level 0** when initiating Video Calls.

Help

View a summary of key assignments

During a call, press **Options** ➔ **Select Help** ➔ Press

Press to return.

Other Engaged Call Operations

- **Digital Zoom**
Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).
 - Not available for Alternative Image.
- **Manner Mode**
Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel.
- To change Incoming Picture, Outgoing Picture, Hold Guidance Pict or Backlight (see **P.5-6**, **P.5-7**) during a call, press **Options**, select **Settings** and press .

Video Call Settings

To change these settings (except Remote Monitor) during calls, see **P.5-4 - 5-6**.

Camera Picture

Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls

Default Internal Camera

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** ➔ **Call/Video Call** ➔ **Video Call** ➔ **Camera Picture**

Select Default Image ➔ Press ➔ **Select Internal Camera or Alternative Image** ➔ Press

To change Alternative Image, select **Alternative Image** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Preset Picture** or **Pictures** ➔ Press ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ➔ Press

To use Custom Screen image, select **Alternative Image** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Custom Screen** ➔ Press ➔ Press

- **Custom Screen** does not appear when Custom Screen (see **P.9-9**) is set to **Pattern 1**.
- External Camera image is selectable during a call.

Incoming Picture

Select quality of incoming images

Default Normal

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** ➔ **Call/Video Call** ➔ **Video Call** ➔ **Incoming Picture**

Select Normal, Quality Prior or Frame Rate Prior ➔ Press

- Select **Quality Prior** for higher quality and **Frame Rate Prior** for faster frame rate.

Outgoing Picture

Select quality of outgoing images

Default Normal

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Call/Video Call (📞) ➔ Video Call ➔ Outgoing Picture

Select **Normal**, **Quality Prior** or **Frame Rate Prior** ➔ Press ●

- Select **Quality Prior** for higher quality and **Frame Rate Prior** for faster frame rate.
- Outgoing Picture setting may automatically change during calls depending on the other party's Incoming Picture setting.

Hold Guidance Pict

Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold

Default Picture 1

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Call/Video Call (📞) ➔ Video Call ➔ Hold Guidance Pict

Preset Picture

Select **Preset Picture** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

Data Folder Images

Select **Pictures** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

Custom Screens

Select **Custom Screen** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

- **Custom Screen** does not appear when Custom Screen (see P.9-9) is set to **Pattern 1**.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for Video Calls

Default Always On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Call/Video Call (📞) ➔ Video Call ➔ Backlight

Select **Always On**, **Always Off** or **Normal Setting** ➔ Press ●

- Selecting **Normal Setting** applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-13).

Loudspeaker

Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Call/Video Call (📞) ➔ Video Call ➔ Loudspeaker

Choose **On** or **Off** ➔ Press ●

- Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when initiating Video Calls in Manner mode.

Mute Microphone

Mute Microphone for Video Calls

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Call/Video Call (📞) ➔ Video Call ➔ Mute Microphone

Choose **On (mute)** or **Off** ➔ Press ●

Remote Monitor

Automatically answer Video Calls from numbers saved in Auto Answer List

Default Switch On/Off: Off, Answer Time: 00 seconds

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (📞) ▶ Video Call ▶ Remote Monitor ▶ Enter Handset Code

Activating/Canceling

Select **Switch On/Off** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **On** (answer automatically) or **Off** ▶ Press ●

Adding to Auto Answer List

Select **Auto Answer List** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select <empty> ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press ●

■ To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select **Auto Answer List** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select <empty> ▶ Press ☑ **Options** ▶ Select **Change** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **From Contacts List** or **From Call Log** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a number ▶ Press ●

■ To change entries, select **Auto Answer List** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press ●

■ To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select **Auto Answer List** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ☑ **Options** ▶ Select **Change** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **From Contacts List** or **From Call Log** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a number ▶ Press ●

■ To delete entries, select **Auto Answer List** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ☑ **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●

- Save up to ten numbers.

Changing Ring Time

Select **Answer Time** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter time ▶ Press ●

Note

- Even if Remote Monitor is active, calls from non-Auto Answer List numbers are not answered.
- Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
- For calls answered via Remote Monitor, a tone sounds from Speaker even if Manner mode is active/handsfree device is connected. (Tone and volume are fixed.)

Camera

Not Available for 813SH Users

Getting Started

812SH features a 2 megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images (see **P.6-5**) or record video (see **P.6-8**).

Tip ► Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless otherwise noted, mobile camera operations are described for External Camera.

Mobile Camera Basics

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer. (see **P.6-11**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's colour filter.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
- To change shutter click sound for still images, see **P.6-15**.

Incoming Calls/Alarm while Using Camera

- Before capturing image or recording video, mobile camera temporarily shuts down for incoming calls and Alarm. End the call or close Alarm Time notice to reactivate camera.
 - Press  during a call to toggle mobile camera and Call windows.
- When recording video, Alarm Times are announced after exiting mobile camera.
- Captured image or clip is temporarily saved. End the call, close Alarm Time notice or exit mobile camera to return.

Precautions for Video Recording

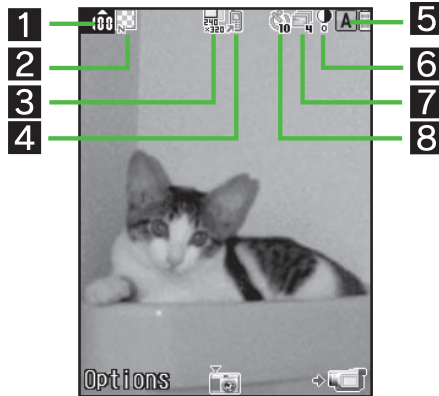
- When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after three minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Camera Display Indicators

Photo Camera Mode



1 Capacity (see P.6-5)

- : 101 or more
- Red background: 3 or less

2 Picture Quality* (see P.6-16)

: High Quality, : Fine, : Normal

*Hidden if IP Service Setting (see P.9-26) is **On** and Hot Status Connection Setting (see P.19-9) is **Online**.

3 Picture Size (see P.6-16)

4 Save to (see P.6-18)

: Handset, : Memory Card (Pictures)
: Memory Card (DCIM), : Ask Each Time

5 Scene (see P.6-16)

: Automatic, : Night, : Sports, : Text

6 Exposure (see P.6-16)

Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

7 Continuous Shoot (see P.6-12)

- : Captured/Total

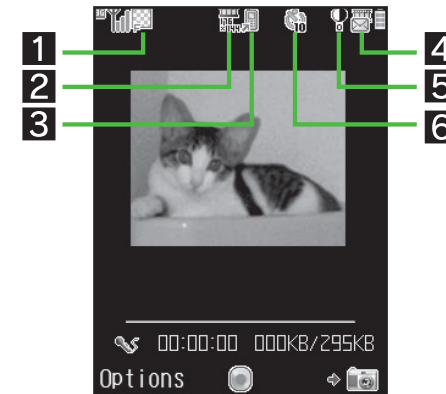
: 4 Pictures, : 9 Pictures, : Overlapped

- : Index Image (composite image for Overlapped) is on Display.

8 Self-timer Active (see P.6-11)

: 10 seconds, : 5 seconds, : 2 seconds

Video Camera Mode



1 Video Quality (see P.6-16)

: High Quality, : Fine, : Normal

*Hidden if IP Service Setting (see P.9-26) is **On** and Hot Status Connection Setting (see P.19-9) is **Online**.

2 Record Size (see P.6-17)

3 Save to (see P.6-18)

: Handset, : Memory Card, : Ask Each Time

4 Record Time (see P.6-17)

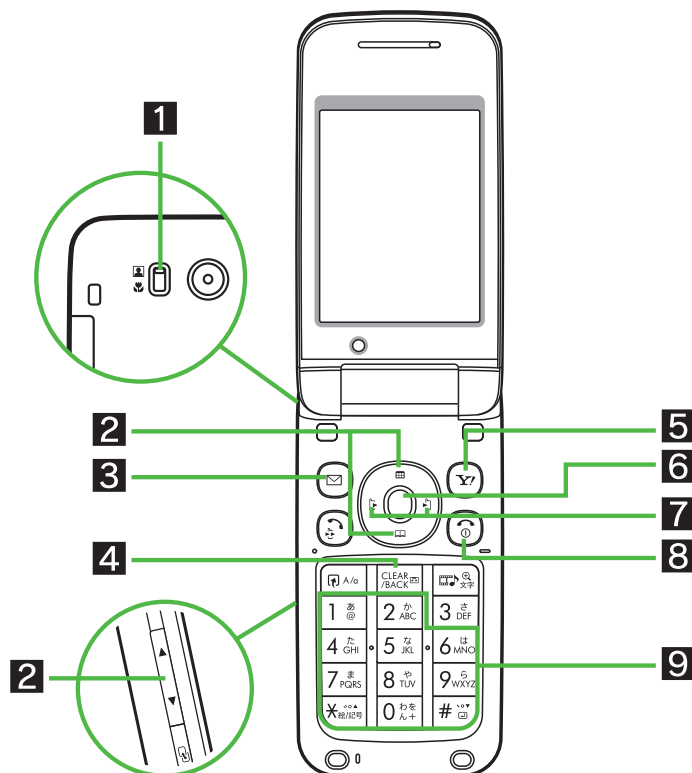
: For Message, : Extended Video, : SD VIDEO

5 Exposure (see P.6-16)

Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

6 Self-timer Active (see P.6-11)

🕒: 10 seconds, 🕒: 5 seconds, 🕒: 2 seconds

Key Assignments**1 Portrait (👤)/Macro (🌸) Selector**

- Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

2 Digital Zoom

Press 📷 (zoom in) or 📷 (zoom out).

- Alternatively, use ◀ (zoom in) and ▶ (zoom out).

3 Options**4 Cancel****5 Toggle Mode****6 Shutter****7 Exposure**

🕒 (darker), 🕒 (brighter)

8 End**9 Function Shortcuts**

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

1 あ	Show Exposure slider
2 か	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.6-15 "Display Indicators")
3 け	Toggle Viewfinder size (see P.6-16 "Display Size")
4 た	Switch save location (see P.6-18 "Save to")
5 な	Change image size (see P.6-16 "Picture Size" or P.6-17 "Record Time/Size")
6 は	Switch Scene options for still image capture (see P.6-16)
7 ま	Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (see P.6-16)
8 と	Change image quality (see P.6-16)
9 ら	Toggle Self-timer mode (see P.6-11)
0 わ	Maximise or cancel Digital Zoom
✖	Open Help (see below)
✖	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-17 "Internal Camera/External Camera")

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode. For details, see P.6-7 "Still Image Functions" and P.6-9 "Video Recording Operations".

Help

- Activate mobile camera and press 0 わ to view a summary of key assignments.

- Press 📷 to scroll down.

- Press 📷 to return.

Alternatively, press [Options] ➔ Select **Help** ➔ Press 📷

Still Images

Photo Camera Mode

Capture images to send via S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc. Various settings and functions are available for camera use.

Picture Size	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots: UXGA) 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots: Quad-VGA) VGA (W 480 x H 640 dots: VGA) Mail L (W 240 x H 320 dots: QVGA) Mail S (W 120 x H 160 dots: QQVGA)
Format	JPEG (.jpg) ¹
Save Location	Handset Data Folder (Pictures) or Memory Card Data Folder (Pictures/DCIM ²)
Picture Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal
Digital Zoom	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots): None 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots): 1 - 1.3x VGA (W 480 x H 640 dots): 1 - 2.5x Mail L (W 240 x H 320 dots): 1- 10x Mail S (W 120 x H 160 dots): 1 - 20x
S! Mail Attachment	OK
Memory Capacity	4,050 files ³

¹Default file names appear as **Image001.jpg**, **Image002.jpg**, etc.

²Save W 480 x H 640 dots or larger images.

³Approximate value for handset Data Folder, with default image size and quality (see **P.6-16**).

Tip ►

- Select storage media beforehand or each time you save an image (see **P.6-18** "Save to").
- Saved video, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce still image memory.
- To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.
- Images captured at or above W 480 x H 640 dots are saved as landscape images. (Images appear as portrait images when viewed on handset.)
 - Open image Details and see Resolution for true image dimensions and orientation.

Capturing Still Images

Main Menu ► Camera

1 Frame image on Display

- In Video Camera mode, press (→) to switch to Photo Camera.
- Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
- Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-11**
- Camera Settings: see **P.6-15**



Photo Camera

2 Press

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

- When Auto Save is active, captured image is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.
- To start over, press .
- To send image via S! Mail, press (→) ► Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-7**



3 Press to save

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ► Press
- To open saved images, see **P.6-10** "Opening Still Images".

4 Press to exit

Note ► Internal Camera Images

Your image appears on Display as a mirror image before/after shutter is released; saved image appears reversed.

Tip ► When Captured Image is Unsaved

Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose **Yes** and press to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose **No** and press to return to captured image.

Still Image Functions

Before Image Capture

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (see P.6-16)
Modes¹	Add Frame²	Add frames (see P.6-13)
	Continuous Shoot³	Capture images sequentially (see P.6-12)
	Camera Effects²	Capture images with special effects (see P.6-14)
Scan Barcode		Scan barcodes (see P.12-19)
Data Folder		Access Data Folder files (see P.6-10)
Picture Size		Select image size (see P.6-16)
Scene¹		Select a mode to suit lighting conditions or subject (see P.6-16)
Picture Quality		Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (see P.6-16)
Self-timer¹		Set Self-timer (see P.6-11)
Settings	Display Indicators	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.6-15)
	Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound (see P.6-15)
	Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save captured image automatically (see P.6-18)

¹ Available for External Camera.

² Available when Picture Size is **240 x 320** or smaller.

³ Available when Picture Size is **480 x 640** or smaller.

Internal Camera/ External Camera	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-17)
Help	View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-4)

Tip ► Open Options and use Multi Selector or Keypad to open/set items.

Before Saving

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
Data Folder	Access Data Folder; delete saved files

Video

Video Camera Mode

Record short video clips to send via S! Mail. Use Memory Cards to save long recordings (recording time varies by card capacity).

Image Size		W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF) W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 320 x H 240 dots (QVGA) W 240 x H 176 dots (HQVGA) ¹
Format		MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp) ²	MPEG-4 (.3gp) ² MPEG-4 (.ASF) ³
Save Location		Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card Data Folder (Videos) Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Video Quality		High Quality/Fine/Normal	High Quality
S! Mail Attachment		OK	N/A
Recording Time (per shot)	For Message	Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	—
	Extended Video	30 minutes	—
	SD VIDEO	—	Capacity-based

¹MPEG-4 (.3gp) only.

²Default file names appear as **video001.3gp**, **video002.3gp**, etc.

³Default file names appear as **MOL001.ASF**, **MOL002.ASF**, etc.

- Tip** ▶
- For best results, record within 1.5 metres, in good light.
 - Select storage media beforehand or each time you save a video file (see **P.6-18** "Save to").
 - Saved still images, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce video memory.
 - To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.

Recording Video

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low or memory becomes full while recording video, recording stops.

Main Menu ▶ *Camera*

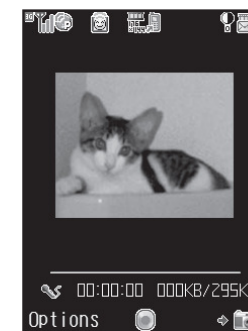
1 Press (+)

Video Viewfinder appears.

- Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

2 Frame image on Display

- Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
- Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-11**
- Camera Settings: see **P.6-15**



Video Camera

3 Press

Recording begins after a tone.

■ To start over, press .

4 To stop, press

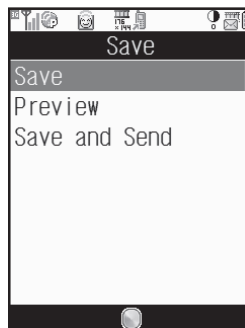
Recording stops with a tone.

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached or memory becomes full.
- When Auto Save is active, recorded video is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.

■ To play back, select **Preview** ➔ Press 

■ Press  during playback to toggle Display Size.

■ To start over, press .



5 To save, select **Save** and press

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

6 Press to exit

Tip ➤

When Recorded Video is Unsaved

Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose **Yes** and press  to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose **No** and press  to return to Menu.

Video Recording Operations

Before Recording

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (see P.6-16)
Display Size¹		Change Viewfinder size (see P.6-16)
Data Folder		Access Data Folder files (see P.6-10)
Record Time/Size		Select a format based on recording time and image size (see P.6-17)
Microphone		Activate to record sound (see P.6-16)
Video Quality¹		Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (see P.6-16)
Self-timer²		Set Self-timer (see P.6-11)
Settings	Save Videos to³	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save recorded video automatically (see P.6-18)
	Video Encode¹	Select a video encoding format (see P.6-17)
Internal Camera¹/ External Camera¹		Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-17)
Help		View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-4)

¹ Available for SubQCIF or QCIF.

² Available for External Camera.

³ Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**.

Tip ► Open Options and use Multi Selector or Keypad to open/set items.

Before Saving

The following menu items appear after recording:

Save	Save video to handset or Memory Card (see P.6-9)
Preview	Play video (see P.6-9)
Save and Send*	Attach video to S! Mail (see P.6-15)

* Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**. If **Attach Only** is set for Send File Settings (see P.14-38), **Multimedia** appears.

Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files directly from Data Folder, see P.8-5.

Opening Still Images

Main Menu ► **Camera** ► *Activate Photo Camera*

1 Press [Options]

2 Select **Data Folder** and press [Enter]

- Memory Status appears at the top.
- When Memory Card is inserted, select **Pictures** or **DCIM** ► Press [Enter]
 - To switch between handset and Memory Card (Pictures) press [Options] ► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ► Press [Enter]
 - To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ► Press [Enter]

3 Select a file and press [Enter]

- To open other files, press [CLEAR/BACK] ► Select one ► Press [Enter]

Playing Video

Main Menu ► **Camera** ► *Activate Photo Camera*

1 Press [Options]

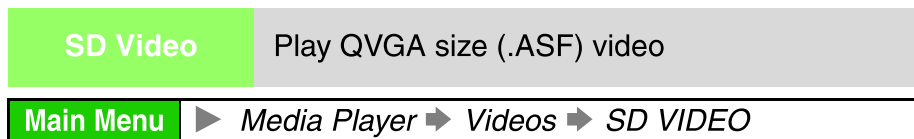
2 Select **Data Folder** and press [Enter]

- Memory Status appears at the top.
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press [Options] ► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ► Press [Enter]
- To open a created sub folder, select it ► Press [Enter]

3 Select a file and press

Video plays. Press  to pause/resume playback.

■ To open other files, press  ➔ Select one ➔ Press 



Select a file ➔ Press 

■ To open other files, press  ➔ Select one ➔ Press 

Special Shooting Modes

Self-timer

Delay shutter release after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.

- Switch to External Camera to use Self-timer.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-6**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-8**).
- Self-timer is **Off** by default.

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Self-timer** and press 

3 Select time and press 

Viewfinder returns (,  or  appears).

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press 

4 Frame image on Display and press

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After selected time elapses, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.

■ To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press  **Cancel**.

■ Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

5 Saving Still Images

1 Press 

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

Saving Video

1 To stop, press 

2 To save, select **Save** and press 

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

6 Press to exit

■ When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: see **P.6-6** or **P.6-9**

Note ➤ Self-timer is not available when shooting speed for Continuous Shoot (see **P.6-12**) is **Manual**.

Tip ➤ Activate mobile camera and press  to toggle Self-timer as follows:

10 seconds ➔ 5 seconds ➔ 2 seconds ➔ Off

Self-timer Details

- To release shutter manually during countdown, press . Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is cancelled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer remains active.)
- Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom and Exposure.

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

4 Pictures¹	Capture four separate images with Index Image ²
9 Pictures³	Capture nine separate images with Index Image ²
Overlapped³	Capture five images to create a composite image

¹Available when Picture Size is **480 x 640** or smaller. (Index image is not created for **480 x 640**).

²Index Image consists of reduced images of each shot.

³Available when Picture Size is **240 x 320** or smaller.

- Press  for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.
- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot.

- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6).

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Modes** and press 

3 Select **Continuous Shoot** and press 

4 Select from **4 Pictures to Overlapped** and press 

 To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press  (Omit the next steps.)

5 Select speed and press 

Viewfinder returns with corresponding indicator (see P.6-3).

- **Manual** is not available when Self-timer (see P.6-11) is active.
- Available shooting speed options vary by selected Picture Size.

6 Frame image on Display and press 

The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.

- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.

 To stop before capturing all frames, press  **Cancel**.

- To save captured images, skip ahead to Step 8.
- To discard captured images, press . (Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.)

7 Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is **480 x 640**, the first captured image appears.

- Use  to toggle between frames and Index Image.

- To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image and proceed to Step 8.

- To send image via S! Mail, press  () ➔ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-7**



4 Pictures

8 To save, press

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

9 Saving All Images

1 Select **All Pictures** and press

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

Saving the Selected Image

1 Select **Selected Picture** and press

Image is saved and captured image returns with Continuous Shoot active.

- To save other images, use  to select one ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Selected Picture** ➔ Press 
- Press  to return to Viewfinder.

10 Press to exit

- When Captured Image is Unsaved: see **P.6-6**

Note ➔ In low light, shooting speed may slow down.

Tip ➔ When Only Selected Image is Saved

Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose **Yes** and press  to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose **No** and press  to return to captured image.

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- Select Picture Size **240 x 320** or smaller to add frames.
- Switch to External Camera to add frames.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-6**); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Modes** and press

3 Select **Add Frame** and press

4 **Preset Frames**

1 Select **Preset Frames** and press

2 Select a frame and press

- To check frames, select one and press  **View**.
 - Press  to return.

Original Frames

1 Select *Data Folder* and press

- Some images may not be used as frames.

2 Select a frame and press

■ To check frames, select one ➔ Press  **View**

- Press  to return.

3 Press

Cancelling

1 Choose *Off* and press

Tip ➔ In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

Capture images with special effects.

- Select Picture Size **240 x 320** or smaller to use Camera Effects.
- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select *Modes* and press

3 Select *Camera Effects* and press

4 Select an effect and press

■ To check effects, press  **View**.

- Press  to return.

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press 

Sending Images

Still Images

Capture and send images as S! Mail attachments.

To attach images in Data Folder, see P.8-11.

1 Capture an image

■ Perform Steps 1 - 2 on P.6-6.

■ To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on P.6-13, use  to select a frame or Index Image.

2 Press ()

Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To attach images without saving to Data Folder, see P.14-38 "Send File Settings".

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-7)

Tip ➔ Make sure recipient's handset is attachment-compatible. For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-29).

Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via S! Mail.

- For details of attachable files, see the table on **P.6-8**.
- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see **P.8-11**.

1 Record video (perform Steps 1 - 4 on P.6-8 - 6-9)

2 Select **Save and Send** and press

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

- To attach video without saving to Data Folder, see **P.14-38** "Send File Settings".
 - If **Attach Only** is set for Send File Settings (see **P.14-38**), **Multimedia** appears instead of **Save and Send**.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-7)

- Note** ➤
- Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets.
 - Only MPEG-4 compatible SoftBank handsets support video files recorded on 812SH.

Tip ➤ For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (see **P.6-4** "Function Shortcuts").
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-6**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-8**); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture/recording.

Shooting Options

Display Indicators	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display		
Photo Camera		Video Camera	

Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Display Indicators** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Normal Finder or Hide Indicators** ➔ Press 

Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound		
Photo Camera		Video Camera	

Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Shutter Sound** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select a pattern** ➔ Press 

- To check sound, select a pattern ➔ Press  **Play**
- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter click sound for Continuous Shoot is unique and fixed.

Display Size

Change Viewfinder size for video

Photo Camera	X	Video Camera	○*

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Original Size

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Display Size** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Original Size or Enlarge** ➔ Press 

Image Settings

Exposure

Adjust brightness for still images and video

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○

Default 0 (standard)

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Exposure** ➔ Press  ➔ Use  to adjust level

- Exposure setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-17).

Picture Size

Select still image size

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	X

Default Mail L (240 x 320)

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Picture Size** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a size (see P.6-5) ➔ Press 

- Select **Mail L (240 x 320)** or **Mail S (120 x 160)** for Internal Camera.
- To change video image size, see P.6-17 "Record Time/Size".

Picture/Video Quality

Select image or video quality

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○*

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Picture Quality or Video Quality** ➔ Press  ➔ Select quality ➔ Press 

- The image quality increases as follows: **Normal** ➔ **Fine** ➔ **High Quality**. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

Scene

Select a mode according to lighting or subject

Photo Camera	○*	Video Camera	X

*Available for External Camera.

Default Automatic

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Scene** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a mode ➔ Press 

- Scene setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-17).

Automatic	Automatic adjustment
Night	Use in low light conditions
Sports	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects
Text	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects

Microphone

Record sound together with video

Photo Camera	X	Video Camera	○

Default On

Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Microphone** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press 

**Record Time/
Size**

Select **For Message** to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via S! Mail
For longer recording, select **Extended Video**

Photo Camera	×	Video Camera	○

Default For Message, QCIF (176 x 144)

Press **Options** ➔ Select **Record Time/Size** ➔ Press ➔ Select **For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO** ➔ Press ➔ Select a size ➔ Press

■ For Message

QCIF (176 x 144)	W 176 x H 144 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)
SubQCIF (128 x 96)	W 128 x H 96 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)

■ Extended Video

QVGA (320 x 240)	W 320 x H 240 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
HQVGA (240 x 176)	W 240 x H 176 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
QCIF (176 x 144)	W 176 x H 144 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)
SubQCIF (128 x 96)	W 128 x H 96 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)

■ SD VIDEO

QVGA (320 x 240)	W 320 x H 240 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)

Video Encode

Select a video encoding format

Photo Camera	×	Video Camera	○*

* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default MPEG4

Press **Options** ➔ Select **Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Video Encode** ➔ Press ➔ Select **H.263 or MPEG4** ➔ Press

Additional Settings

**Internal Camera/
External Camera** Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○*

* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default External Camera

Press **Options** ➔ Select **Internal Camera or External Camera** ➔ Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

Save to

Select a save location for images or video

Photo Camera	☐	Video Camera	☐

* Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**.

Default Phone Memory (handset)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Save Pictures to or Save Videos to** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a location or Ask Each Time** ➔ Press

- For **Ask Each Time**, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video (with Record Time/Size set to **For Message**).

Camera Mode/Size	Save Location
Photo Camera (120 x 160 or 240 x 320) Video Camera	Phone Memory (handset) Memory Card
Photo Camera (480 x 640 or larger)	Phone Memory (handset) SD (Pictures) (Memory Card) SD (DCIM) (Memory Card)

- Note** ➤
- **Ask Each Time** is not available when Auto Save (see below) is active.
 - To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

Auto Save

Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically

Photo Camera	☐	Video Camera	☐

Default Off

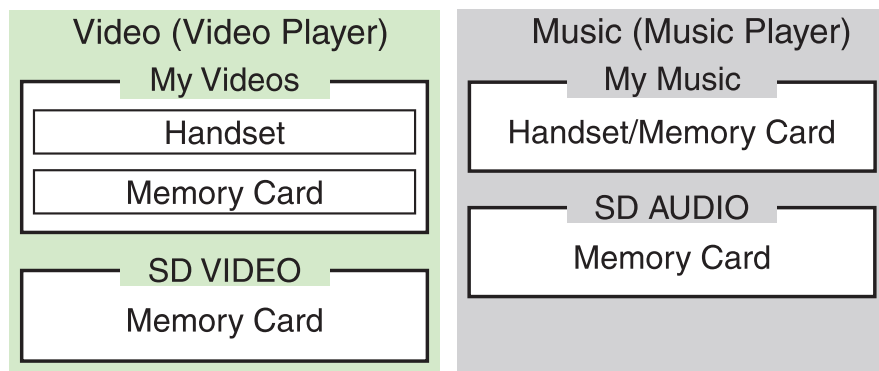
Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Auto Save** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Note** ➤ Auto Save is not available when **Ask Each Time** is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (see above).

Media Player

Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to listen to music (Music Player) or play video (Video Player). Save video/music files to handset or Memory Card (including SD VIDEO and SD AUDIO). To open files, specify the location first.



- For My Videos and My Music details, see **P.7-15**.
- Playback stops when battery is low. Charge battery and resume from where it stopped (see Step 1 on **P.7-6** or **P.7-8**).
- Consume media as it downloads (Streaming: see **P.15-12**).

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
 - When playback stops while streaming, the URL is saved to History (see **P.15-13**).
- A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Downloading Music/Video

Open music/video-related links directly from Media Player to download music (Chaku-Uta®) and video via the Internet.

- Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.
- Use Music Search (see **P.7-3**) to search by title, artist, etc.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player*

- 1 Select *Music* or *Videos* and press** ●
- 2 Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos* and press** ●

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Follow the links to download music/video.

Music Search

■ Follow these steps to access Yahoo! Keitai Music Search site.

In Step 1 on P.7-2, select *Music* ➔ Press  ➔

Select *Music Search* ➔ Press 

- Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

Downloading Content Keys

Content Keys are required to use some downloaded files.

- Acquire Key to play a copy protected file ( appears).
- To download Keys, open All Music/All Videos or Playlist (see Step 2 on P.7-6/Step 3 on P.7-9) then follow these steps.

1 Select a file and press

- Select a file with .

2 Choose *Yes* and press

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Music Files from PCs

Save music files onto Memory Cards from CDs, etc. using PCs or other devices to play them on handset Music Player.

Precautions for Handling Music Files on PCs

■ Respect copyrights.

- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using music saved on Memory Cards.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Converted CD files may not be attachable to S! Mail.

■ Play SD-Audio standard compliant music files. (These files cannot be used as ringtones.)

Handset supports Secure AAC and AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

- For AAC files, see "Precautions for Handling AAC Files" on P.7-4.

■ Save music to the specified directory.

Save music to either of the following folders on Memory Card via Mass Storage (see P.11-9), Memory Card reader/writer or other compatible devices.

- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Details

- For more about saving music files from PCs, see "Utility Software Starter Guide" on Utility Software CD-ROM.

Precautions for Handling AAC Files

Use software supporting AAC conversion.

- Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
- iTunes is an example only. SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. registered in the United States and other countries.

Supported bit rate and sampling frequency are as follows.

Bit Rate (kbps)	16 ^{*1} , 24 ^{*1} , 32, 48, 64, 96 ^{*2} , 128 ^{*2}
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000

^{*1}Monaural only.

^{*2}Stereo only.

Note ► Titles and artist names for AAC files created using iTunes, etc. do not appear on handset.

Playing Music

Play music on handset/Memory Card.

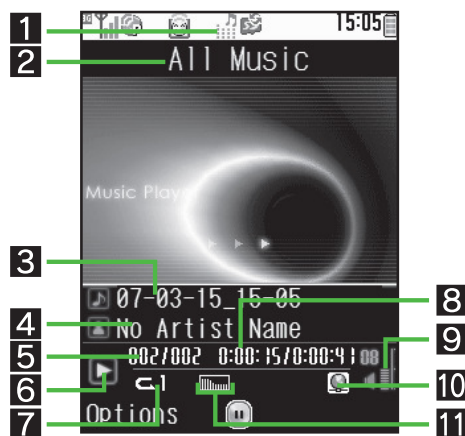
Use Headphones, etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.

Precautions before Playing Music/Video

- Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Grasp the plug when connecting or disconnecting Headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Port.
- Use only the specified accessories (Headphones, etc.). Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Port.
- When battery is low, Music Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music Player shuts off.

- Tip ►**
- To activate/cancel Manner mode during playback, press  for 1+ seconds.
 - In Manner mode, sound is audible from Headphones.
 - To answer calls during playback with Headphones, etc., press Call Button for 1+ seconds.
 - Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
 - As saved files increase, files, My Music and Playlists may take longer to open.

Playback Window Indicators



1 Playback in Progress

2 Playlist Name

3 Title

- Titles also appear on External Display during playback.

4 Artist Name

- **No Artist Name** appears if not available.
- Artist names also appear on External Display during playback.

5 Track Number

6 Status

- : Playing, ■: Paused, ►: Fast Forwarding, ◀: Fast Rewinding

7 Playback Pattern (see P.7-7)

- ◀ 1: Repeat, ◀ : Repeat All, -+ : Random
- Indicator does not appear for Normal.

8 Elapsed Time

9 Volume

10 Information Link

-  appears when linked information is accessible via Access WEB Link (see P.7-7 "Accessing Linked Information").

11 Sound Effects (see P.7-7)

-  : Bass, (◀▶): Surround, (◀▶): Surround Bass
- Indicator does not appear for Normal.

Playback

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Music

1 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO* and press

■ For *My Music*, use  to select **Music Folder** or **Ring Songs-Tones**.

■ To play the last played file from where it stopped, select **Last Played Music** ► Press 



My Music

2 Select *All Music* or a Playlist and press

Three Playlists (プレイリスト1 to プレイリスト3) are saved by default.

■ To search files, press  **Options** ► Select **Search** ► Press 

■ When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.

■ To sort files, press  **Options** ► Select **Sort** ► Press  ► Select a sort option ► Press 

■ **Sort** is available for All Music files.

3 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.

- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal** (see P.7-7).

Tip ► Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (optional accessory) to remote control Music Player activated via Music menu.

Playback Operations (Music/Video)

Replay	Press  Press repeatedly to play previous files. ¹
Skip Forward	Press  ²
Fast Forward	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Fast Rewind	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Pause	Press  Press again to resume playback.
Volume Control ³	Press  /  (up) or  /  (down)
Mute	Press  (Long Press) Press  to play sound.
Open Help	Press  , or press  Options ► Select Help ► Press 

¹ In Random Play,  only replays the current file.

² Not available for the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal**.

³ Volume level remains as set until changed.

Opening File Properties

- While playing or paused, press  **Options** ➔ **Select Details** ➔ **Press** 
 - Press  to scroll down.
 - Press  to return.

Accessing Linked Information

- While playing or paused, press  **Options** ➔ **Select Access WEB Link** ➔ **Press**  ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** 
 - Linked information is accessible while  appears.
 - Accessing linked information activates Yahoo! Keitai ( appears) and may incur transmission fees.
 - Press  to disconnect.

Note ➤ Playback pauses for Alarm, then resumes automatically.

- Tip** ➤
- Press  to create mail messages and use Phone Book, etc. during playback; however, some functions are not available.
 - **Stop music?** appears when  is pressed in Standby. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

Playback Settings

Sound Effects

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

- Use Headphones to enjoy sound effects.
Default Normal

Main Menu ➤ *Media Player* ➔ *Music* ➔ *Settings*

Select Sound Effects ➔ **Press**  ➔ **Select an effect** ➔ **Press** 

Normal	No sound effects
Bass	Boosts bass frequencies
Surround	Adds surround effect
Surround Bass	Adds surround effect with enhanced bass

Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ➤ *Media Player* ➔ *Music* ➔ *Settings*

Select Playback Pattern ➔ **Press**  ➔ **Select a pattern** ➔ **Press** 

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files
Random	Play all files randomly

Playing Video

Play video files recorded with mobile camera or obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Use Headphones, etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.
- Read the precautions on **P.7-4** beforehand.

Playback Window Indicators



1 Video Image/Subtitles

2 Clip Number

3 Status

▶: Playing, ⏸: Paused, ▶: Advancing Frame

⏩: Fast Forwarding, ⏮: Fast Rewinding

4 Playback Pattern (see P.7-10)

- Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (see **P.7-5**).

5 Elapsed Time

- To specify start point, see **P.7-9** "Time Search".

6 Volume

7 Information Link

- appears when linked information is accessible via Access WEB Link (see **P.7-7** "Accessing Linked Information").
- To disable linked information, see **P.7-10** "Web Link Setting".

Tip ▶ Press during playback to toggle Display Size (see **P.7-10**).

Playback

Play video on Video Player.

- To change playback settings, see **P.7-10**.
- To add subtitles, see **P.7-12**.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos*

1 Select *My Videos* or *SD VIDEO* and press

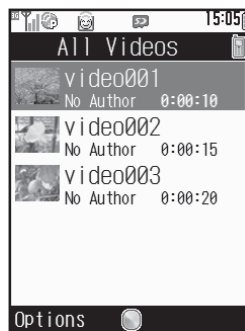
- For *SD VIDEO*, skip ahead to Step 4 on **P.7-9**.

To play the last played file from where it stopped, select **Last Played Video** ▶ Press

2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* and press

3 Select *All Videos* or a Playlist and press

- To search files, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Search** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter search text ➔ Press 
 - When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
- To sort files, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Sort** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a sort option ➔ Press 
 - **Sort** is available for All Videos files.



All Videos

4 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.

- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal** (see P.7-10).
- To access linked information, see P.7-7.

Playback Operations (Video Only)

For basic operations, see P.7-6 "Playback Operations (Music/Video)".

Change Settings	Press  Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press  ➔ P.7-10
Edit	See P.7-11
Frame Advance	While paused, press  (Long Press)
Toggle Display Size	Press  or  (see P.7-10)

Video with Linked Information

- After playing video (with ) Internet connection confirmation appears.
 - To access linked information, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
 - Confirmation does not appear when Web Link Setting (see P.7-10) is **Off**.

Time Search

- Specify start point while playing or paused.
 - Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Time Search** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter time ➔ Press 

- Tip** ➤
- Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.
 - Out of Video Playback window, Media Player shuts down after five minutes of inactivity.

Playback Settings

Available for My Videos files only.

Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Playback Pattern** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press ●

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files
Random	Play all files randomly

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for playback

Default Always On

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Backlight** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press ●

Always On	Backlight remains on during playback
Always Off	Backlight remains off during playback
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-13)

Display Size

Change playback size

Default Enlarge

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Display Size** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen** ▶ Press ●

- Some Display sizes are not selectable.
- Alternatively, press  or  during playback to toggle Display Size as follows: Full Screen (no indicators) → Full Screen (with indicators) → Normal → Enlarge
 - Press  or  in paused Full Screen view to show or hide indicators.

Web Link Setting

Select whether to show linked information

Default On

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Web Link Setting** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **On (show) or Off** ▶ Press ●

Editing Video

HQVGA (W 240 x H 176 dots) or larger video cannot be edited.

Crop	Select Two Points	Save portion between two points as a new file
	Delete Before	Save portion after selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion before selected point as a new file
Subtitle		Add subtitle text to video

- Note** ►
- Some files may not be edited.
 - Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 812SH or 813SH.
 - To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Clipping Portions between Two Points

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-9.

- 1** While playing or paused, press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Edit** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 
 - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4** Select **Crop** and press 
- 5** Select **Select Two Points** and press 

Video plays.

 - Press  to pause/start video.
- 6** Press  **Start** at the start point

The start point is specified and playback resumes.
- 7** Press  **End** at the end point

The portion is saved and playback starts.

Note ► Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Cropping Video Clips

Delete the portion before or after the selected point to save the rest as a new file.

Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.7-9**.

- 1** While playing or paused, press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Edit** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 
 - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4** Select **Crop** and press 
- 5** Select **Delete Before** or **Delete After** and press 

Video plays.

 - To adjust start point, press  to start/pause video.
 - The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.

 To cancel, press .
- 6** Press  **Cut** at approximate start point

The remaining portion is saved and playback starts.

Note ► Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Adding Subtitles

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

Entering Text

After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.

- Save up to ten subtitles (48 single-byte alphanumeric each).
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.7-9**.

- 1** While playing or paused, press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Edit** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 
 - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4** Select **Edit Subtitle** and press 
- 5** Select **<empty>** and press 
- 6** Enter text and press 
 - Press  to pause/play video.
- 7** Press  **Start** at the start point

8 Press **End** at the end point

Edit Subtitle menu opens.

- If video has ended before pressing , start over from Step 7.

 To edit text, select **Edit Text** → Press 
→ Edit text → Press 

9 Change display settings (see right) and add effects (see P.7-14)

- To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, proceed to Step 10.

10 After completing all the settings, press **OK**

- To add more, repeat Steps 5 - 10.

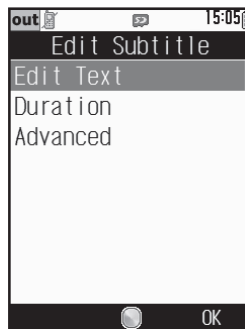
 To edit saved subtitles, select one → Press  → Select **Edit Text** → Press  → Edit → Press  → Perform from Step 9

 To delete saved subtitles, select one → Press  **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

11 Press **Save**

12 Select **Overwrite or Create New** and press

- Playback starts. (Subtitles appear only in Normal size.)



Edit Subtitle Menu

Display Settings

Follow these steps in Step 9 on the left.

Duration

Set timing and time period for subtitles

Select **Duration** → Press  → Press  **Start** at the start point → Press  **End** at the end point

 When finished, perform from Step 10 on the left.

Display Position

Set position for subtitles to appear

Select **Advanced** → Press  → Select **Display Position** → Press  → Use  to select a position → Press 

 When finished, press  → Perform from Step 10 on the left.

Font Size

Change font size of subtitles

Select **Advanced** → Press  → Select **Font Size** → Press  → Select **Large(20x20)** or **Small(12x12)** → Press 

 When finished, press  → Perform from Step 10 on the left.

Scrolling

Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll

Default Direction: Stop, Effect: Frame In

Scroll Direction

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Direction** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Stop, Left to Right or Right to Left** ➔ Press ●

■ When finished, press  ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

Scroll Effects

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an effect ➔ Press ●

Frame In	Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the centre
Frame Out	Subtitle appears in the centre and scrolls out
Rolling	Subtitle scrolls from end to end

■ When finished, press  ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

On-Screen Time

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **On-Screen Time** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter time ➔ Press ●

■ When finished, press  ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

Background Colour

Select from seven background colours

Default Black

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Background Colour** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press ●

■ When finished, press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

Adding Text Effects

- Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.7-13.

Font Colour

Change font colours

Default White

Changing Colour of Entire Text

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Font Colour** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **All** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press ●

■ When finished, press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

Changing Colour of Portion

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Font Colour** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Select Text** ➔ Press ● ➔ Use  to select the first character of text ➔ Press ● ➔ Use  to select the end point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press ●

■ When finished, press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-13

Highlight

Highlight subtitles

Select *Advanced* ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Select *Highlight*** ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Use** ⬢ to select the first character of text ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Use** ⬢ to select the end point ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Select a colour** ➔ **Press** ●

When finished, press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on **P.7-13**

Blink

Set subtitles to flash

Select *Advanced* ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Select *Blink*** ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Use** ⬢ to select the first character of text ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Use** ⬢ to select the end point ➔ **Press** ●

When finished, press  ➔ Perform from Step 10 on **P.7-13**

Reset

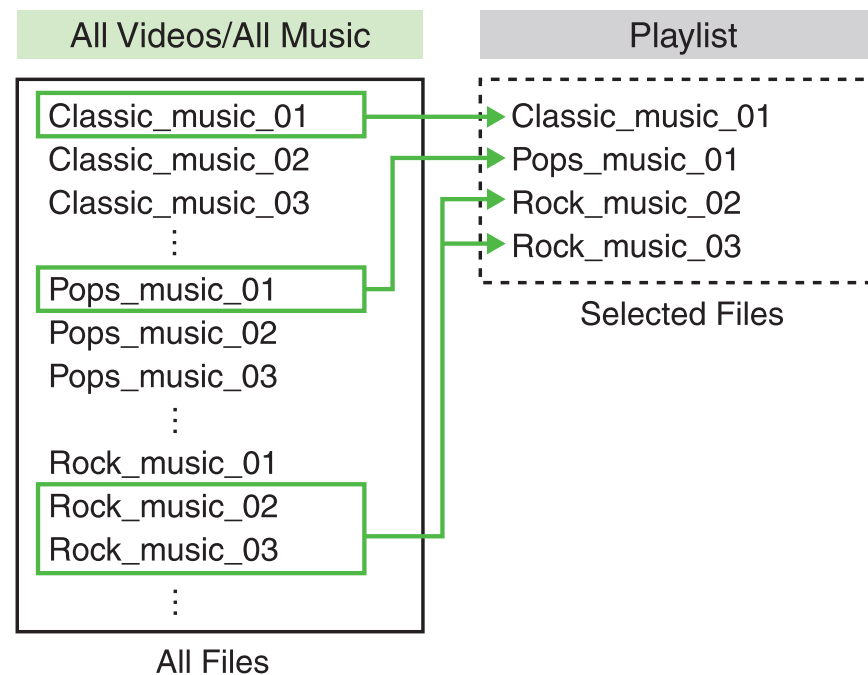
Reset Advanced subtitle settings

Select *Advanced* ➔ **Press** ● ➔ **Press**  **Reset** ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** ●

- Reset does not affect Duration setting.

Managing Video & Music Files

Organise video/music files on handset in My Videos and My Music. All files are saved in **All Videos** or **All Music**. Use Playlists to organise them.



- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Three Playlists are saved by default. To create new Playlists, see **P.7-16**.
- Use **Music Manager** on the supplied Utility Software CD-ROM to create Playlists and organise music files via PCs.

Note ➤ To save video to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Adding New Playlist

Create up to 99 Playlists in **My Videos**, **My Music** and **SD AUDIO** each.

- Playlists cannot be added into **SD VIDEO**.
- **Playlist 1** to **Playlist 3** (or **♪ 1** to **♪ 3**) are saved in My Videos and My Music by default.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

1 Video Playlists

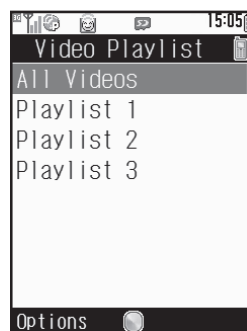
- 1 Select **Videos** and press ●
- 2 Select **My Videos** and press ●
- 3 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card**

Music Playlists

- 1 Select **Music** and press ●
- 2 Select **My Music** or **SD AUDIO**

2 Press ●

- To delete Playlists, select one ➔
Press [Options] ➔ Select **Delete Playlist** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●
- To rename Playlists, select one ➔
Press [Options] ➔ Select **Edit List Title** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter new name ➔ Press ●



My Videos

3 Press [Options]

4 Select **Add New Playlist** and press ●

5 Enter name and press ●

Adding Files to Playlists

Add files to Playlists from **All Videos** or **All Music**.

- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- **SD VIDEO** files cannot be added to Playlists.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

1 Adding Video Files

- 1 Select **Videos** and press ●
- 2 Select **My Videos** and press ●
- 3 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card**

Adding Music Files

- 1 Select **Music** and press ●
- 2 Select **My Music** or **SD AUDIO**

2 Press ●

3 Select **All Videos** or **All Music** and press ●

4 Select a file and press [Options]

5 Select **Add to Playlist** and press ●

6 Select a Playlist and press

File is added to the end of the Playlist.

-  To delete saved files, press  ➔ Select a Playlist ➔ Press  ➔ Select a file ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
-  To move files within a list, press  ➔ Select a Playlist ➔ Press  ➔ Select a file ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Change Order** ➔ Press  ➔ Use  to move file ➔ Press 

Opening Playlist Properties

-  Follow these steps when Playlists are listed (see Step 2 on P.7-6, Step 3 on P.7-9 or Step 2 on P.7-16).
Select **All Music**, **All Videos** or a Playlist ➔
Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Details** ➔ Press 

Deleting SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO Files

Deleting **SD VIDEO** or **SD AUDIO All Music** files deletes source files.

Deleting Video Files

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➔ *Videos* ➔ *SD VIDEO*

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Delete** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 

Deleting Music Files

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➔ *Music* ➔ *SD AUDIO* ➔ *All Music*

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Delete Track** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 

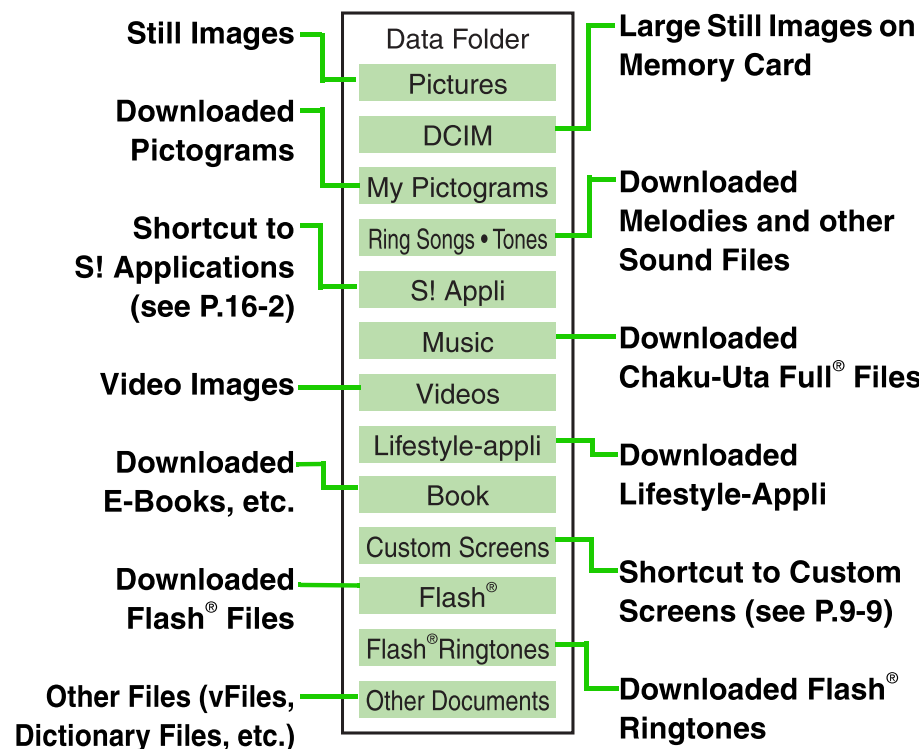
Deleting My Videos/My Music Files

-  Delete All Videos and All Music files from **Videos** and **Ring Songs·Tones/Music** in Data Folder respectively (see P.8-8).

Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder

Handset files are organised in folders by file format.

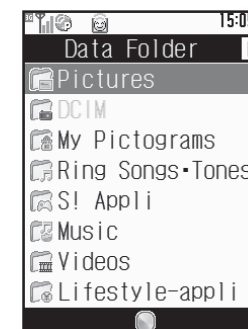


- Tip ►**
- Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly from **Pictures**, **My Pictograms**, **Ring Songs•Tones**, **S! Appli**, **Music**, **Videos**, **Lifestyle-appli**, **Books** and **Custom Screens**.
 - Exchange files via Bluetooth® (see P.10-2) or infrared (see P.10-10) with compatible SoftBank handsets.

Window Description

To open Data Folder from Standby, follow these steps.

Press  ➔ **Select *Data Folder*** ➔ Press 



Memory Status

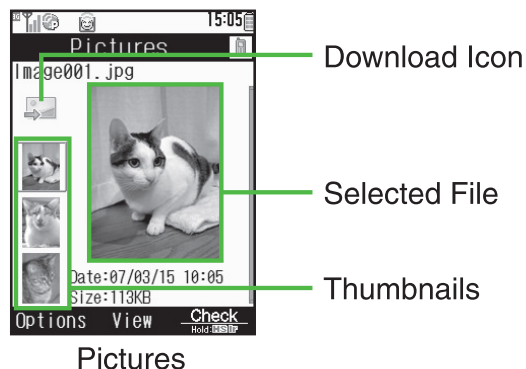
■ To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow these steps.

Select *Memory Status* ➔ Press  ➔ **Select *Phone Memory or Memory Card*** ➔ Press 

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

File List

In Data Folder, select a folder and press . File list appears.



Major Icons

Still Image & Animation Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	JPEG (.jpg)	JPEG image
	PNG (.png)	PNG image
	E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva)	Animation (may include sound)
	SVG (.svgz)	SVG-T file

Video Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	3GPP video image
	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp or .mp4)	3GPP video image

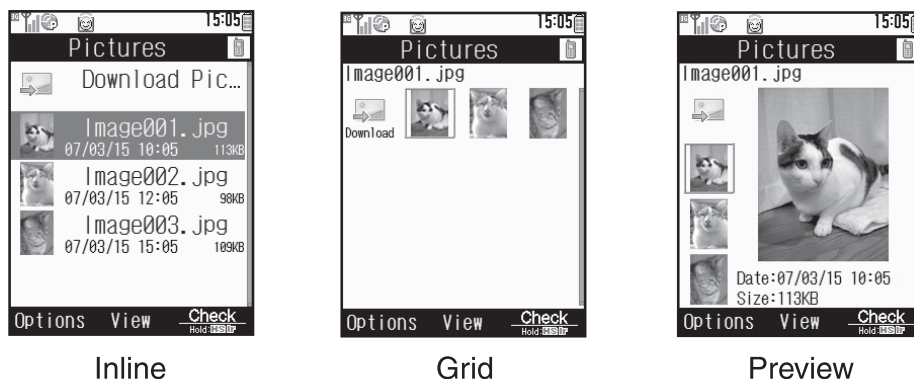
Sound Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	SMAF (.mmf)	Melody via the Internet (may include images)
	Audio (.mp4)	Downloaded Chaku-Uta®
	Voice (.amr)	Voice/sound recorded on Voice Recorder

- Tip** ▶
-  appears for copy protected files.  appears for files in the public domain.
 -  appears for files used for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtone, ringvideo, etc.
 -  appears for copy/forward protected files.

Display Settings

Switching File List View



Inline

Grid

Preview

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
- 2 Press [Options]
 - Select a folder other than My Pictograms, Ring Songs·Tones, S! Appli, Music, Lifestyle-appli, Flash® or Flash® Ringtones.
- 3 Select **Manage Items** and press ●
- 4 Select **Change List View** and press ●
- 5 Select **Inline View**, **Grid View** or **Preview View** and press ●
 - **Preview View** appears for folders other than Books, Videos, Custom Screens or Other Documents.

Tip ▶ Alternatively, press [View] in file list to toggle the view.

Sorting Files

Sort files by name, date, size, type or Content Key status. Select **Unsorted** to list files randomly.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
 - ▶ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
 - ▶ Press ●
- 2 Press [Options]
 - Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
 - If **Download** icon is highlighted in file list, skip ahead to Step 4.
- 3 Select **Manage Items** and press ●
- 4 Select **Sort** and press ●
- 5 Select a method and press ●

Note ▶ It may take a while to sort many files.

Tip ▶ To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

Opening Files

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

File list appears.

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options** ► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ► Press 
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ► Press 



File List
(Pictures)

2 Select a file and press

The content plays or appears.

- Press  to zoom in. (Press repeatedly to zoom in more.)
 - To zoom out, press .
- Press  (up) or  (down) to adjust volume.
- To switch sound file name display, select a file ► Press  **Options** ► Select **Item Displayed** ► Press  ► Select **File Name** or **Title** (default) ► Press 

3 Press to return to file list

- Press  twice to return to file list from zoomed view.
- From file list, press  to return to Data Folder.

Note ► Remote control on LCD Remote/Mic (optional accessory) is disabled for Music Player activated via Data Folder.

Activating Mobile Camera

- Open file list in Pictures, DCIM or Videos folder and follow these steps.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Take Picture or Record Video** ► Press 

- Mobile camera activates in Photo Camera mode from Pictures and DCIM folders, or in Video Camera mode from Videos folder.
- To capture still images, see P.6-6.
- To record video, see P.6-8.

Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ► Press 

2 Select a file and press **Check**

- ☒ appears.
 - Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To uncheck, select a file with ☒ ► Press  **Uncheck**

3 Repeat Step 2 to select more

- Copy, move, or delete files (see P.8-8, P.8-9).

Slide Show

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
➔ Press 

2 Select a file and press **Options**

3 Select **Slide Show** and press

Slide Show starts.

- All images in the folder appear sequentially.
- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press  or  to advance or reverse frames.

4 Press to stop

Setting Interval

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press  **Set** ➔ **Select Speed** ➔ Press  ➔
Select Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual ➔ Press 

- Speed is **Normal** by default.

Repeat Slide Show

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press  **Set** ➔ **Select Repeat** ➔ Press  ➔
Choose On or Off ➔ Press 

- For **Off**, all images in the folder appear then file list returns.
- Repeat is **On** by default.

Properties

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
➔ Press 

2 Select a file and press **Options**

- Select multiple files as needed.

3 Select **Details** and press

- Press  to scroll down.
- The following information appears:
File name, type, size, last modified date, vendor, copy/forward protection and other restrictions (number of times to open, expiry term), etc.
 - Available information varies by file.

SVG Files

- Handset supports Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny (SVG-T). Follow these steps to view graphics such as tables or maps.

Press  ➔ **Select Data Folder** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Other Documents** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select an SVG file** ➔ Press 

- Press  **Options** to use the following functions.
- Key Assignments:

Line Scroll	
Page Scroll	 (Up),  (Left)  (Right),  (Down)
Zoom	 (Zoom Out),  (Zoom In)
Rotate	 (Counterclockwise)  (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	
Set Default	

- Some features may not be available depending on the file.
- To create SVG files via PC, use PC Document Conversion Utility on Utility Software CD-ROM.
- For more information on SVG-T, visit http://j.sst.ne.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html (Japanese only).

CCF Files

- Follow these steps to read CCF files (comics, photo books, etc. saved in Books folder) designed for BookSurfing® application (see P.18-9).

Press  ➔ **Select Data Folder** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Books** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select a CCF file** ➔ Press 

- BookSurfing S! Application starts.
- Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, **Application suspended. End application?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press  twice to start BookSurfing.
- When BookSurfing is paused, properties of opened CCF file may not be accessible.

Flash®

- Download Flash® animation files via the Internet; use as Wallpaper (see P.9-3), etc.

Flash® Ringtones

- Download Flash® Ringtones via the Internet; use as ringtones with Flash® animation (see above).

My Pictograms

- Download GIF image Pictograms via the Internet; create Arrange Mail (see P.14-11).

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.
- Folders cannot be added to DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press ●
- 4 Select *Create Folder* and press ●
- 5 Enter name and press ●

Changing File/Folder Name

- File extensions do not change.
- Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
 - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, |, ?, * and " are not supported.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Folders/files in DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder cannot be renamed.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
- 2 Select a file or folder and press  **Options**

- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press ●
- 4 Select *Rename* and press ●
- 5 Edit name and press ●

Deleting Files & Folders

Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.

To delete S! Applications, see P.16-5 "Deleting S! Applications".

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
- 2 *Deleting Folders*
 - 1 Select a folder and press  **Options**
 - Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.

Deleting Single Files

- 1 Select a file and press  **Options**

Deleting Multiple Files

- 1 Perform from Step 2 on P.8-5 to select multiple files and press  **Options**

Deleting All Created Folders & Files

- 1 Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2 Select *Manage Items* and press ●

3 Select **Delete** or **Delete All** and press ●

■ For deleting folders or **Delete All**, enter Handset Code ➡ Press ●

4 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Files in S! Appli and Lifestyle-appli folders cannot be copied or moved.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press ●

- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ➡ Press ●

2 Copying/Moving Single Files

1 Select a file and press [Options]

Copying/Moving Multiple Files

- ### 1 Perform from Step 2 on P.8-5 to select multiple files and press [Options]

3 Select **Copy** or **Move** and press ●

4 Select **Phone** or **Memory Card** and press ●

■ To move files set as Wallpaper or used for other functions, choose **Yes** ➡ Press ●

■ To copy/move to created sub folders, select a folder ➡ Press ●

5 Select **Copy here..** or **Move here..** and press ●

Note ▶

- If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, only the remaining files are copied.
- Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, ringtone and ringvideo.

- **Set as Wallpaper**, **Add to Ph.Book**, **Set as Ring Video** and **Set as Ringtone** appear only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

Note ► Some copy protected files (🔑 or 🔒) cannot be used even if **Set as Wallpaper**, **Add to Ph.Book**, **Set as Ring Video** or **Set as Ringtone** appears.

Wallpaper

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures**, **DCIM**, **Flash®** or **Other Documents** and press ●

■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
► Press ●

- 2 Select a file and press ☐ **Options**

- 3 Select **Set as Wallpaper** and press ●

■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select **Centred**, **Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ► Press ●

- For Display size images or **Centred**, use 🔍 to zoom in/out or press ☐ to rotate.

- 4 Press ●

Wallpaper is set.

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures**, **Ring Songs·Tones**, **Music**, **Videos** or **Flash® Ringtones** and press ●

- 2 Select a file and press ☐ **Options**

- 3 Select **Add to Ph.Book** and press ●

■ For more, perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on P.4-8.

Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as ringvideo or ringtone for Voice Calls.

Ringvideo

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Videos

- 1 Select a file and press ☐ **Options**

- 2 Select **Set as Ring Video** and press ●

Ringtone

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Ring Songs·Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones** and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press [envelope icon] **Options**
- 3 Select **Set as Ringtone** and press ●

S! Mail Attachments

Attach files to S! Mail from Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press [envelope icon] **Options**
- 3 Select **Send** and press ●
- 4 Select **As Message** and press ●
■ For large JPEG images, select attachment size ► Press ●
- 5 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-7)

Printing Images

Connect handset to a printer via Bluetooth® and print JPEG/ PNG images.

- Use a Bluetooth®-compatible printer.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures, DCIM or Other Documents** and press ●
■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ► Press ●
- 2 Select a still image and press [envelope icon] **Options**
- 3 Select **Print** and press ●
- 4 Select **Via Bluetooth** and press ●
Device search starts.
- 5 Select a device and press ●
■ When requested, enter passcode ► Press ●
■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press ●
- 6 Choose **Yes** and press ●
Offline Mode is set and printing starts.
 - When printing completes, printer stops automatically.
■ To cancel, press [cancel icon] **Cancel**.

Note ► Some images sent to Basic Imaging Profile-compatible printers may not be printed due to printer limitations.

Editing Still Images

Changing Image Size

Resize Pictures folder images for Wallpaper, Alarm, etc.

- Alternatively, crop image for size or zoom in/out on portions.
(File size changes when images are resized.)
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Resize to Preset Size

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options
() ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Resize

1 Select from *To Wallpaper* to *Alarm* and press

A rectangle appears on the image (except for *To Wallpaper* and *Power On/Off*).

To Wallpaper	W 240 x H 320 dots
Power On/Off	W 240 x H 320 dots
For Incoming Call	W 176 x H 144 dots
Alarm	W 240 x H 104 dots



For Incoming Call

2 Use to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- To zoom in/out, press  **Resize** ▶ Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
- To start over from size selection, press .

3 Press

4 Press **Save**

5 Select *Save as New* and press ■ To overwrite, select *Overwrite* ▶ Press

6 Enter name and press

7 Select a location and press Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Cropping Images

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options
() ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Resize

1 Select *Cut* and press

2 Use to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press

3 Use to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press

■ To cancel, press  ▶ Start over from Step 1

4 Use to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- To zoom in/out, press  **Resize** ▶ Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
- To cancel, press  ▶ Start over from Step 1

5 Press

6 Press **Save**

7 Select *Save as New* and press ●

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** ➔ Press ●

8 Enter name and press ●**9 Select a location and press** ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Visual Effects (Retouch)

Dress up images with pre-loaded visual effects.

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images including Continuous Shoot images.
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu

► Data Folder ➔ Pictures ➔ *Select a file* ➔ *Options*
(📧) ➔ Edit ➔ Picture Editor ➔ Retouch

1 Select an effect and press ●

- Retouch Effects:

Sepia	Renders image in sepia tone
Sparkling	Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of image
Ripples	Superimposes widening rings over image
Tile	Adds a brick frame around image
Emboss	Renders image in black and white relief
Oil Painting	Renders image as a blurred image
Clear Frame	Adds a transparent 3D frame around image
Round Frame	Adds a round, opaque frosting around image
Soft Frame	Adds a soft, opaque edged frame around image
Zigzag Frame	Adds a jagged edged frame around image

■ To start over, press .

2 Press ●**3 Press** **Save****4 Select *Save as New* and press** ●

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** ➔ Press ●

5 Enter name and press ●**6 Select a location and press** ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ► Edited images may be too large to save or send via S! Mail.

Adding Text & Stamps

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options
() ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor

1 Adding Text

1 Select Paste and press 

2 Select Free Text and press 

■ To enter the date, select **Date** ▶ Press  ▶ Skip ahead to Step 2

3 Enter text and press 

- Enter up to 16 characters.

Adding Stamps

1 Select Stamp and press 

2 Select a stamp and press 

■ To change the stamp, press .

2 Use  **to move text or stamp to target location and press** 

■ To specify colours, press  **Colour** ▶ Select text colour ▶ Press  ▶ Select outline colour or no outline ▶ Press  ▶ Press  **Done**

3 Press  **Save**

4 Select Save as New and press 

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** ▶ Press 

5 Enter name and press 

6 Select a location and press 

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Face Arrange

Make smiley, angry or sad faces.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see **P.8-15**).
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options
() ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Face Arrange

1 Select a type and press

- Face Arrange Types:

Collage: Right-half	Copies right side of face onto left side
Collage: Left-half	Copies left side of face onto right side
Grin	Pulls eyes down & mouth up
Mad	Pulls eyes up & mouth down
Sad	Pulls eyes & mouth down
Big Eyes	Adds graphic eyes
Burning Eyes	Adds flames in the eyes
Crying	Adds tears
Aristocrat	Adds a monocle and moustache
Angry Mark	Adds a stress mark to face

■ To check current positions of targets, press  **Parts**.

■ Press  to return.

■ To start over, press .

2 Press 

3 Press  **Save**

4 Select **Save as New** and press 

 To overwrite, select **Overwrite** ➔ Press 

5 Enter name and press 

6 Select a location and press 

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ➤ When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

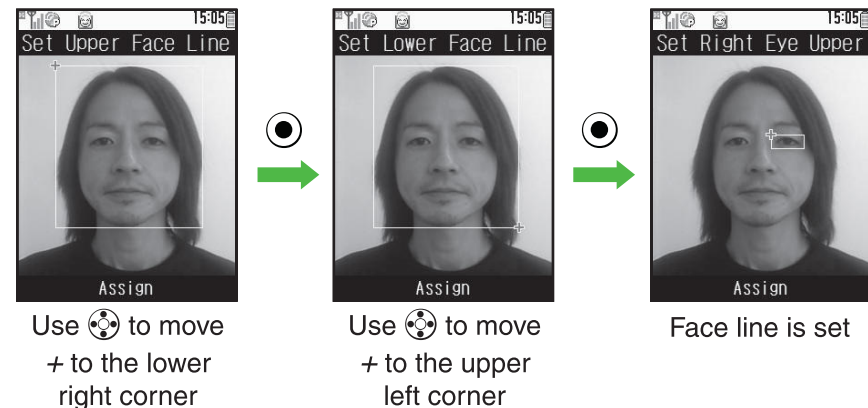
Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.

1 In Step 1 under "Face Arrange" on P.8-14, press  **Parts**

2 Press  **Modify**

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line



 To start over, press .

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way

- When finished, all the targets appear.

- To readjust targets, start over from Step 2.

 To restore the original positions, press . (Not available after setting mouth position.)

5 Press 

6 Choose **Yes** and press 

7 Select a location and press 

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

- Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Additional Picture Effects

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Frame

Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images

Main Menu

► Data Folder ► Pictures ► *Select a file* ►
Options (ⓧ) ► Edit ► Picture Editor ► Frame

Select a frame ► Press ● ► Press ● ► Press [Y?] **Save** ► Select **Save as New** ► Press ● ► Enter name ► Press ● ► Select a location ► Press ●

■ To change the frame, press [CLEAR/BACK] before assigning it.

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ► Press ●

Correction

Correct images

Main Menu

► Data Folder ► Pictures ► *Select a file* ►
Options (ⓧ) ► Edit ► Picture Editor ► Correction

Select from **Sharpness to Dark** ► Press ● ► Press ● ► Press [Y?] **Save** ► Select **Save as New** ► Press ● ► Enter name ► Press ● ► Select a location ► Press ●

■ To change Correction type, press [CLEAR/BACK] before assigning it.

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ► Press ●

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG and PNG images.

Rotate

Rotate images

Main Menu

► Data Folder ► Pictures ► *Select a file* ►
Options (ⓧ) ► Edit ► Picture Editor ► Rotate

Select a type ► Press ● ► Press ● ► Press [Y?] **Save** ► Select **Save as New** ► Press ● ► Enter name ► Press ● ► Select a location ► Press ●

■ To start over from type selection, press [CLEAR/BACK] before second press of ●.

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ► Press ●

File Format/ File Size

Convert file format and change file size

Main Menu

► Data Folder ► Pictures ► *Select a file* ►
Options (ⓧ) ► Edit ► Picture Editor ► File Format

Converting File Format

Select **File Format** ► Press ● ► Select a format ► Press ● ► Press [CLEAR/BACK] ► Press [Y?] **Save** ► Enter name ► Press ● ► Select a location ► Press ●

- Changing file format may affect file size and image quality.

Changing File Size

Select **File Size** ► Press ● ► Select a size ► Press ● ► Press [CLEAR/BACK] ► Press [Y?] **Save** ► Select **Save as New** ► Press ● ► Enter name ► Press ● ► Select a location ► Press ●

■ To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ► Press ●

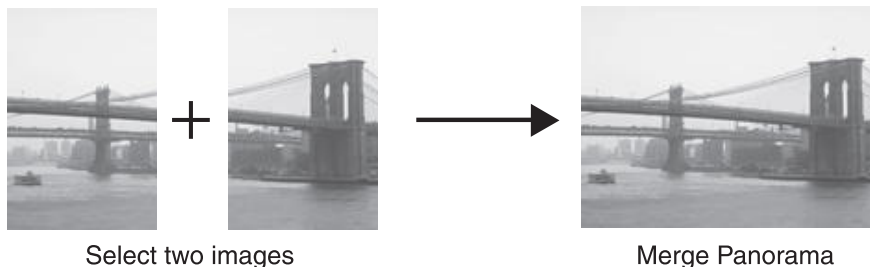
- Changing file size may affect image quality.

Cancelling Effects

- Before saving/adding an effect, select **Undo** ➔ Press ●
 - To restore effect immediately after cancelling, select **Redo** ➔ Press ●

Panorama Images

Combine two still images into one.



Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/ W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if colour tones are different between two images.

Main Menu

▶ Data Folder ➔ Pictures ➔ *Select a file* ➔ *Options*
 (☒) ➔ Edit ➔ Composite

1 Select **Merge Panorama** and press ●

Left image is set.

- **Merge Panorama** is selectable only for compatible files.

2 Select [2] and press ●

3 Select another image and press ●

Two images are set.

- If image is incompatible, a message appears; select another.

4 Select **EFFECT** and press ●

5 Select from **Standard** to **Document** and press ●

- To check images, select either ➔ Press ●

■ Press **CLEAR (BACK)** to return.

- To change images, select one ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ☒ **Change** ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ●

- To switch the positions, press ☒ **Flip**.

6 Press [Y] **Save**

7 Press ●

8 Enter name and press ●

9 Select a location and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

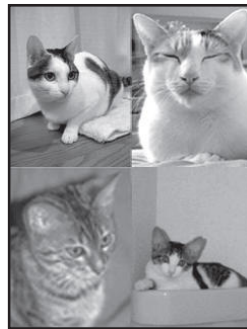


Merge Panorama Window

Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.



Split Image

Main Menu

► Data Folder ► Pictures ► *Select a file* ► *Options*
([Envelope]) ► Edit ► Composite

1 Select **SplitPicture 240x320** or **SplitPicture 120x160** and press **Enter**

Upper left image is set.

2 Select **[2]** and press **Enter**

3 Select an image and press **Enter**

- If image is incompatible, a message appears; select another.

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to add images

- In Step 2, select **[3]** or **[4]**.

■ To preview Split Picture, press [Envelope] **Options**

► Select **View Composite** ► Press **Enter**

■ Press **Enter** to return.

■ To change images, select one ►

Press **Enter** ► Press [Envelope] **Change** ► Select an image ► Press **Enter**

■ To delete images, select one ► Press [Envelope]

Options ► Select **Remove** ► Press **Enter**

► Choose **Yes** ► Press **Enter**



Split Picture Preview

5 Press **[Y]** **Save**

6 Enter name and press **Enter**

7 Select a location and press **Enter**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Additional Settings

Mode Settings

Activate Normal, Manner, Drive or Original mode to change multiple handset settings at one time; each mode offers a basket of defaults tailored to a particular usage pattern.

Activating a Mode

Mode Settings Select from four modes

Default Normal

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☺) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press ●

Customising Modes

Customise Manner, Drive or Original in Mode Settings. To customise Normal, see **P.9-14** "Sounds & Alerts", **P.9-17** "Any Key Answer" or **P.2-9** "Answer Phone".

Tip ► Volume settings are fixed in Manner mode. Volume, Vibration and Answer Phone settings are fixed in Drive mode.

Edit

Customise Volume, Vibration, Event Light and Status Light settings

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☺) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press ☑ **Edit** ► Select an item ► Press ● ► Customise settings (see **P.9-14** "Volume", **P.9-15** "Vibration", **P.9-16** "Event Light" and **P.9-16** "Status Light")

Any Key Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**)

Default Drive: On, Manner/Original: Off

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☺) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press ☑ **Edit** ► Select **Any Key Answer** ► Press ● ► Choose **On or Off** ► Press ●

Answer Phone

Activate or cancel Answer Phone for incoming calls in Manner or Original mode

■ Answer Phone setting is fixed for Drive mode.

Default Manner/Drive: On, Original: Off

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☺) ► *Mode Settings*

Select **Manner or Original** ► Press ☑ **Edit** ► Select **Answer Phone** ► Press ● ► Choose **On or Off** ► Press ●

Reset

Reset

Reset settings for each mode

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☺) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press ☑ **Reset** ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

Display

Display Settings

Wallpaper

Use Wallpaper to show an image in Standby

Default Flash PANTONE

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Display ▶ Wallpaper

Preset Pictures

Select **Preset Pictures** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ●

Data Folder Images

Select **Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or Other Documents** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ●

■ To use files in DCIM folder, select **DCIM** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Centred, Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select an image ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Centred, Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For Display size images or **Centred**, use 📐 to zoom in/out or press 🔄 to rotate.

Cancelling

Select **Blank** ▶ Press ●

Restoring Custom Screen Wallpaper

■ When Wallpaper is set while Custom Screen is active, Wallpaper takes priority over Custom Screen Wallpaper. (Custom Screen remains active.)

To restore Custom Screen Wallpaper, follow these steps after opening Wallpaper menu.

Select **Custom Screen** ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

Note ▶

- Some images may be incompatible/not appear correctly.
- When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear.
- Files in My Pictograms are not selectable.

Tip ▶

Using Wallpaper shortens Battery Time.

System Graphics

Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows

Default Power On/Power Off: Preset Animation
Voice Call/Video Call/Circle Talk/Alarm: Pattern 1

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Display ▶ System Graphics

Power On/Power Off

Select **Power On or Power Off** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Preset Animation, Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or Other Documents** ▶ Press ●

■ For **Pictures, Flash® or Other Documents**, select an image ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For **DCIM**, select a folder ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

Incoming Calls/Alarm

Select from **Voice Call to Alarm** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select from **Pattern 1 to Pattern 3, Pictures, DCIM, Flash®**, **Other Documents or Custom Screen** ➔ Press ●

■ For **Pictures, Flash®** or **Other Documents**, select an image ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

■ For **DCIM**, select a folder ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

- If a rectangle appears for images in Pictures, DCIM or Other Documents, use ● to specify display area and press ●.
- **Custom Screen** is selectable when compatible Custom Screen is active.

Note ➤ Images may not appear for incoming calls/Alarm while messaging with an S! Application paused.

Restoring Custom Screen System Graphics

- When System Graphics are set while Custom Screen is active, System Graphics take priority over Custom Screen System Graphics. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore Custom Screen System Graphics for **Voice Call**, **Video Call**, **Circle Talk** or **Alarm**, follow these steps after opening the corresponding menu.

Select **Custom Screen** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

- Note** ➤
- Ringtone and ringvideo images for Sounds & Alerts may take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls.
 - Ringtone, ringvideo and Picture images for Phone Book entries take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls with caller ID.

Font Settings

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, mail messages and the Internet

Default Font Size: Standard, Font Weight: Normal

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Phone Settings (●) ➔ Display ➔ Font Settings

Font Size

Select **Font Size** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an item ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a size ➔ Press ●

Font Weight

Select **Font Weight** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a weight ➔ Press ●

- Selected font weight applies to all windows.

Note ➤ Some menu items, function names, etc. differ by font size.

Tip ➤ Some windows may not support Font Settings.

Clock/Calendar

Select Clock/Calendar type/view

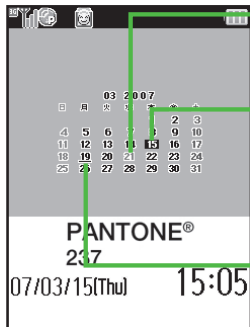
Default Clock (M)

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⊙) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Clock/Calendar

Select a type ▶ Press ⊙

Calendar Contents



Holiday

- Appears in red

Current Date

- Highlighted

Scheduled Date

- Underlined (see P.12-2 "Calendar" for schedules)

Clock + 1 Month

- Note** ▶
- Calendar appears on Wallpaper.
 - Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of January 2007. (Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are gazetted on 1 February of the previous year, and thus may differ from dates scheduled on handset.)

- Tip** ▶ When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Calendar may not appear.

Show Indicators

Show or hide indicators/Soft Keys in Standby

Default Status Area: On, Softkey Area: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⊙) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Show Indicators

Select **Status Area** or **Softkey Area** ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Choose **On** (show) or **Off** ▶ Press ⊙

Show Operator Name

Show or hide the name of your service provider (**SoftBank**, etc.) in Standby

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⊙) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Show Operator Name

Choose **On** (show) or **Off** ▶ Press ⊙

Greeting Message

Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⊙) ▶ Display ▶ Greeting Message

Edit Message

Select **Edit Message** ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Enter a message ▶ Press ⊙

- Enter up to 10 characters.

Switch On/Off

Select **Switch On/Off** ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press ⊙

Dial Number

Change font of numbers entered in Standby

Default Pattern 1

Main Menu

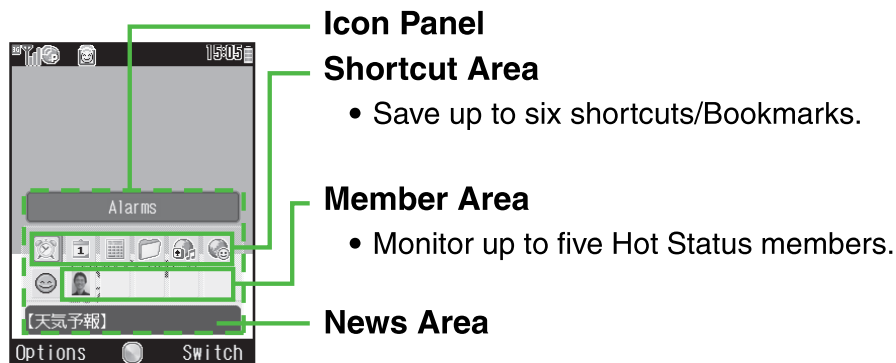
▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⊙) ▶ Display ▶ Dial Number

Select **Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** or **Pattern 3** ▶ Press ⊙

Standby Window (Japanese Only)

Access shortcut icons, view Live Monitor news (see **P.15-14**) or monitor Hot Status members (see **P.19-4**) in Standby; open Standby Window in Shortcut, Headline, Communication or Calendar mode.

Window Description (Shortcut Mode)



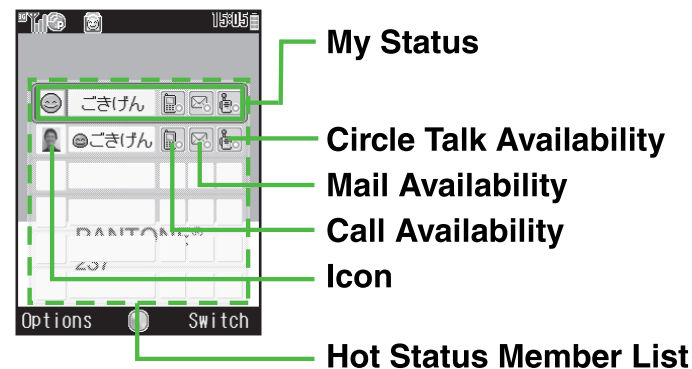
- Above is an example of Icon Panel in **Template 1** view.
- Icon Panel view is **Template 7** by default.

Change Templates: see **P.9-8**

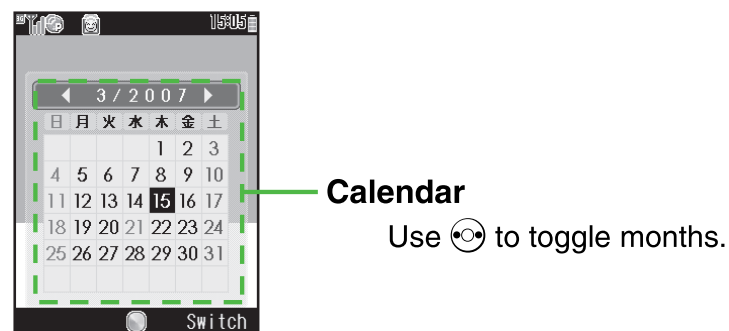
Window Description (Headline Mode)



Window Description (Communication Mode)



Window Description (Calendar Mode)



- Subscription and member or content registration required to use Live Monitor (see **P.15-14**) or Hot Status (see **P.19-4**).
- Standby Window opens in Shortcut mode (see left) by default.

1 Press ☉

Standby Window opens in last used mode.

2 Use ☉ to select an item and press ●

Shortcut target, news or member status appears.

- In Calendar mode, press ● to use Calendar.

Press ☉ to exit.

Tip ► For more about icons and information in Headline/Communication mode, see **P.15-14** or **P.19-4**.

Toggle Modes

■ Press .

Customising Shortcut Mode

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Shortcut mode (see **P.9-6**).

Assign Shortcut

Save up to six shortcuts

Select an icon or a blank entry ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Assign Shortcut* ► Press  ► Use  to select a menu item ► Press  ► Select a function, folder or menu ► Press  ► Press  **Assign**

Assign Bookmark

Save up to six Bookmarks

Select an icon or a blank entry ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Assign Bookmark* ► Press  ► Use  to select a Bookmark ► Press  ► Select an icon ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press 

Move

Change the order of icons

Select an icon ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Move* ► Press  ► Select an icon ► Press  (Up) or  (Down) ► Press 

Delete

Delete shortcut/Bookmark icons

Select an icon ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Delete* ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press 

Assign Member

Monitor up to five Hot Status members

■ Save members to Hot Status member list (see **P.19-5**) or save Phone Book entries (see **P.4-3**) beforehand.

Select an icon or a blank entry ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Assign Member* ► Press  ► Select *Status Member List* ► Press  ► Select a member ► Press 

■ To select from Phone Book, select an icon or a blank entry ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Assign Member* ► Press  ► Select *Phone Book* ► Press  ► Select an entry ► Press 

Move

Change member order

Select an icon ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Move* ► Press  ► Select a member to move ► Press  (Up) or  (Down) ► Press 

Delete Member Icons

Delete Hot Status member icons

Select an icon ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Icon Panel Display* ► Press  ► Select *Delete* ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press 

• My Status icon cannot be deleted.

Change Icon Change member icons

Select an icon ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Icon Panel Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Change Icon* ➔ Press  ➔ Select an icon ➔ Press 

Add News Content Add Live Monitor items; corresponding titles appear in News area

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Icon Panel Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Add News Content* ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 1 in "Live Monitor List" on P.15-15 or in "S! Loop List" on P.15-16

Change Templates Change Icon Panel view

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Icon Panel Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Change Templates* ➔ Press  ➔ Select a template ➔ Press 

News Speed Change title scroll speed

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Icon Panel Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *News Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *News Speed* ➔ Press  ➔ Select speed ➔ Press 

Target News Select whether to scroll all titles or unread only

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Icon Panel Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *News Display* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Target News* ➔ Press  ➔ Select an option ➔ Press 

Tip ➔ To update Live Monitor items automatically, see P.15-16 - 15-17 "Automatic Update".

Customising Headline Mode

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Headline mode (see P.9-6).

Add News Content Add Live Monitor items; corresponding news appears in News List

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *News Panel Settings* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Add News Content* ➔ Press 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip ➔ To update Live Monitor items automatically, see P.15-16 - 15-17 "Automatic Update".

Customising Communication Mode

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Communication mode (see P.9-6).

Assign Member Monitor up to five Hot Status members

■ Save members to Hot Status member list (see P.19-5) or save Phone Book entries (see P.4-3) beforehand.

Select a row ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Member Panel Settings* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Assign Member* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Status Member List* ➔ Press  ➔ Select a member ➔ Press 

■ To select from Phone Book, select a row ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Member Panel Settings* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Assign Member* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Phone Book* ➔ Press  ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press

Move

Change member order

Select a member ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Member Panel Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press ➔ Select a member to move ➔ Press (Up) or (Down) ➔ Press

Delete

Hide members

Select a member ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Member Panel Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press

Change Icon

Change member icons

Select a member ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Member Panel Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Change Icon** ➔ Press ➔ Select an icon ➔ Press

Language Setting**Language**

Switch handset interface between Japanese and English

Default Automatic

Main Menu ▶ Settings ➔ Phone Settings ➔ 言語選択

Select **Automatic**, **English** or **日本語** ➔ Press

- For **Automatic**, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.

Custom Screens

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, ringtones and more, all at the same time.

- In addition to preloaded Custom Screens (**Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** and **Pattern 3**), use Custom Screens downloaded via the Internet.
- **カスタモご紹介** in handset Data Folder (Custom Screens) is a doorway to **カスタモ** Mobile Internet site offering Custom Screens.
- **Pattern 1** is installed by default.

Downloading Custom Screens

To download Custom Screens, open handset Data Folder (Custom Screens).

- Some Custom Screens are fee-based.
- To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys to handset (see **P.9-10**).
- Custom Screens and Custom Screen Keys are downloaded via the Internet. Make sure signal is strong.
- Custom Screens can also be downloaded via **カスタモ** (<http://www.custamo.com/>) using a PC.

Note ▶ Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

1 Select **Download Custom Screens** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and **カスタモ** appears.

- To read introduction to **カスタモ** first, select **カスタモご紹介**
 ▶ Press  ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

2 Download a Custom Screen

- Read through information on the site.
- On PCs, download Custom Screens to the following Memory Card directory. Do not change file name, extension, etc.
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Custom Screens

■ Purchasing Custom Screen Keys

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select **Custom Screens** and press

Available Custom Screens appear.

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators:

Key Found		Key Not Found	

-  appears for the current Custom Screen.
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 
Options ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 

2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press **Options**

- Select one with .

3 Select **Activate** and press

- When 100 Content Keys are already downloaded, delete Keys before downloading new ones.

4 Press **Activate**

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Custom Screen Key download page contains the following information:
 - Custom Screen Key price
 - Payment method
 - Terms of service
 - Link to customer enquiry service

- To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

5 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following online instructions

6 After download, press **OK**

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

Delete

Delete Custom Screen and Custom Screen Key

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Custom Screens

Select a Custom Screen ► Press [Options] ► Select **Delete** ► Press [Enter] ► Choose **Yes** ► Press [Enter]

■ To delete the corresponding Custom Screen Key at the same time, choose **Yes** ► Press [Enter]

■ To cancel, choose **No** ► Press [Enter]

- Custom Screen Keys cannot be deleted independently.
- Delete **カスタムご紹介** as needed.

Web Access

Access Custom Screen source sites

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Custom Screens

Select a Custom Screen ► Press [Options] ► Select **Web Access** ► Press [Enter]

Custom Screen Setup

Custom Screen setup may take some time. (Pressing [Enter] does not cancel setup.)

Preset Custom Screens

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Custom Screens ► Preset Screens

1 Select **Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** or **Pattern 3** and press [Enter]

2 Select **Icon Menu**, **Horizontal** or **Vertical** and press [Enter]

Custom Screens in Data Folder

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select **Custom Screens** and press [Enter]

Available Custom Screens appear.

(Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators: see P.9-10)

■ To switch between handset and Memory Card, press [Options] ► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ► Press [Enter]

2 Select a Custom Screen and press [Enter]

- Custom Screens with ✂ cannot be set.
- Select a Custom Screen and press [Options] to open properties, change file names or copy/move to other folders (see P.8-6, P.8-8, P.8-9).

3 Press [Enter]

Custom Screen is set and Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

- Note** ►
- Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
 - Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on content.

Tip ► Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

Familiar Usability

Download and install applications that load user interface themes based on previous SoftBank or other handsets.

Note ▶ Familiar Usability does not completely remake handset.

Downloading Familiar Usability

Download Familiar Usability applications via the Internet.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ▶ *Custom Screens*

1 Select **Download Familiar Usability** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and Familiar Usability download site appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Familiar Usability Setup

Download Familiar Usability application beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ▶ *Custom Screens*

1 Select a Familiar Usability application and press

Cancelling Familiar Usability

■ Press  ▶ Press  (メニュー) ▶ Select **おなじみ操作解除**
▶ Press 

Cancelling Familiar Usability Temporarily

■ Press  ▶ Press  (メニュー) ▶ Select **通常メニュー** ▶ Press 

- Note** ▶
- Activating Familiar Usability restores default Wallpaper, System Graphics, tones, etc. and cancels Simple Menu; cancelling Familiar Usability also returns these settings to their defaults.
 - Familiar Usability does not support Font Settings (see **P.9-4**) or Language Setting (see **P.9-9**).

Light Settings

Backlight

Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

Default Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► Backlight

Backlight Illumination Time

Select **Time Out** ► Press ● ► Select time ► Press ●

■ To disable Backlight, choose **Off** in Time Out list ► Press ●

Display Brightness

Select **Brightness** ► Press ● ► Use ☺ to adjust level ► Press ●

Tip ► Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

Display Saving

Select a period of inactivity after which Display turns off

Default 2 minutes

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► Display Saving

Select a period ► Press ●

Tip ► Even when Display Saving is set to **Always On**, Display turns off automatically after five minutes of Call Time. To turn it back on, press a key other than ☎.

External Display Settings

Duration

Select active time for External Display

Default 5 seconds

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► External Display ► Duration

Select time ► Press ●

■ To disable External Display, choose **Off** ► Press ●

Messages

Select whether to open new received messages on External Display

■ Set Caller Display (see P.9-14) to **On** beforehand.
Default Display

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► External Display ► Messages

Select **Display or Not Display** ► Press ●

Display Date & Time

Change External Display Clock view

Default Clock & Date

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► External Display ► Display Date&Time

Select a type ► Press ●

- With handset closed, press ☎ to toggle Clock view. (Display Date & Time setting is not affected.)

Clock Type

Change External Display font

Default Pattern 1

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Display ► External Display ► Clock Type

Select **Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3** ► Press ●

Caller Display

Show or hide caller's number or name on External Display

Default On

Main Menu

Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Display ➔ External Display ➔ Caller Display

Choose **On** (show) or **Off** ➔ Press (●)

Sounds & Alerts

Customising Handset Responses

Volume

Set volume level for handset functions

Main Menu

Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Sounds & Alerts ➔ Volume

Select an item ➔ Press (●) ➔ Use (⬆️) to adjust level ➔ Press (●)

- Select from five levels. When **Increasing Volume** is set, volume increases every four seconds from Level 1 to Level 5. **Increasing Volume** is not available for **General Volume**.

Ringtone/ videos

Set ringtones or ringvideos for incoming communications

Main Menu

Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Sounds & Alerts ➔ Ringtone/videos

Assign Tone in Preset Sounds

Select **For Voice Call**, **For Video Call** or **Circle Talk** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Preset Sounds** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a tone ➔ Press (●)

- For items other than **For Voice Call**, **For Video Call** or **Circle Talk**, select **Assign Tone** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Preset Sounds** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a tone ➔ Press (●)
- To play tones, select one and press (🔍) **Play**.
- Press (🔍) **Stop** to stop.

Assign Tone in Data Folder

Select **For Voice Call**, **For Video Call** or **Circle Talk** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Ring Songs·Tones or Music** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a file ➔ Press (●)

- For items other than **For Voice Call**, **For Video Call** or **Circle Talk**, select **Assign Tone** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Ring Songs·Tones or Music** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a file ➔ Press (●)
- To play files, select one and press (🔍) **Play**.
- Press (🔍) **CLEAR / BACK** to stop.

Assign Video or Flash® Ringtone

Select **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Videos or Flash® Ringtones** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a file ➔ Press (●)

- For **For New Message** or **Delivery Report**, select **Assign Tone** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select **Videos or Flash® Ringtones** ➔ Press (●) ➔ Select a file ➔ Press (●)
- To play files, select one and press (🔍) **Play**.
- Press (🔍) **CLEAR / BACK** to stop.

Duration (Not Available for Calls or Circle Talk)

Select an item other than *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *Circle Talk* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Duration* ➔ Press  ➔ Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) ➔ Press 

Restoring Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo

- When ringtone/ringvideo is set while Custom Screen is active, ringtone/ringvideo takes priority over Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo, select **Custom Screen** instead of **Preset Sounds**, etc. and press .

- Note** ►
- Some files may not be usable.
 - When a Memory Card file is set as ringtone/ringvideo or System Sounds, removing the card restores default tone/sound (except for **Power On Sound**). Inserting the same card restores Memory Card file-based tone/sound unless the corresponding setting/file is changed/edited.
 - Default ringtone/ringvideo may sound/play for Voice Calls when downloading files, streaming, editing still images, etc.
 - S! Application set as Screensaver that also responds to incoming communications may take priority.
 - Video files over 3 MB and 3GPP video cannot be set as ringvideo.

Vibration

Handset vibrates for incoming communications

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ➔ *Phone Settings* () ➔ Sounds & Alerts ➔ Vibration

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Switch On/Off** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** ➔ Press 

- **Link to Sound:** Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

Vibration Pattern

Select an item ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Vibration Pattern** ➔ Press  ➔ Select from **Pattern 1** to **Pattern 5** ➔ Press 

- To check vibration patterns, select one and press  **Check**.
- Press  **Stop** to stop.

Note ► Disable vibration when charging.

Event Light

Set Small Light illumination for incoming communications

Default On (Live Monitor: Off)

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► Event Light

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item ► Press ● ► Select **On**, **Link to Sound** or **Off** ► Press ●

- Select **Link to Sound** to allow compatible SMAF files to control Small Light. For other SMAF files, Small Light flashes to the main melody.

Status Light

Set Small Light illumination for missed incoming communications

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► Status Light

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item ► Press ● ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press ●

- Default Settings:

	Switch On/Off
For Missed Call	On
For New Message	On
Hot Status	Off
For Answer Phone	Off
out Missed Calls	On
Bluetooth Notif.	Off
Delivery Report	Off

Customising System Sounds

Keypad Tones

A tone sounds when a key is pressed

Default Touch Tone

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► System Sounds ► Keypad Tones

Assign Touch Tone

Select **Touch Tone** ► Press ●

Assign a Pattern

Select **Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** or **Pattern 3** ► Press ●

■ To check patterns, select one and press [Play].

■ Press [Stop] to stop.

Disable Keypad Tone

Choose **Off** ► Press ●

Circle Talk

Select a tone for Circle Talk

Default Xylophone

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► System Sounds ► Circle Talk

Select a tone ► Press ●

■ To play tones, select one and press [Play].

■ Press [Stop] to stop.

- Earpiece Volume applies to tones during Circle Talk. (Volume setting on P.9-14 applies to Circle Talk ringtones.)

Other System Sounds

Select tones for errors, power on/off, handset open/close, or charging completion; set duration

Default Warning Tone: Sound Effect 11 (0.5 seconds)
Power On/Off Sound: Off (5 seconds)
Handset Open: Sound Effect 14 (2 seconds)
Handset Close: Sound Effect 15 (2 seconds)
Charge Full: Off (2 seconds)

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► System Sounds

Sound Patterns in Preset Sounds

Select an item ► Press ● ► Select *Tone or Sound* ► Press ● ► Select *Preset Sounds* ► Press ● ► Select a tone ► Press ●

- To play tones, select one and press [Enter] **Play**.
- Press [Enter] **Stop** to stop.

Sound Patterns in Data Folder

Select an item ► Press ● ► Select *Tone or Sound* ► Press ● ► Select *Ring Songs·Tones* ► Press ● ► Select a file ► Press ●

- To play files, select one and press [Y] **Play**.
- Press [CLEAR/BACK] to stop.

Duration

Select an item ► Press ● ► Select *Duration* ► Press ● ► Select/enter time ► Press ●

- Tone/sound does not play longer than the source regardless of Duration setting.

Disable Tone

Select an item ► Press ● ► Select *Tone or Sound* ► Press ● ► Choose *Off* ► Press ●

Additional Sound Settings

Ringer Output

Set ringer source when using Headphones, etc.

Default Earphone/Speaker

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Ringer Output

Select *Earphone or Earphone/Speaker* ► Press ●

- Even if **Earphone** is selected, ringtone sounds from Speaker when Headphones are not connected.

Earpiece Volume

Setting applies when placing/answering calls

Default Level 3

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Earpiece Volume

Use 📶 to adjust level ► Press ●

Any Key Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see P.2-6)

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Sounds & Alerts ► Any Key Answer

Choose *On or Off* ► Press ●

Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

World Clock	See P.12-14	Alarm	See P.12-11

Set Date/Time	Set the date and time

Main Menu	Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Date & Time ➔ Set Date/Time

When Time Format is 24 Hour

Enter the year ➔ Enter the month ➔ Enter the day ➔ Enter the time ➔ Press ●

When Time Format is 12 Hour

Enter the year ➔ Enter the month ➔ Enter the day ➔ Enter the time ➔ Use 🕒 to select am or pm ➔ Press ●

- Note** ➤
- Entry order varies by Date Format (see right). Use the letters below the entry fields as a guide.
 - When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately three days), Clock will need to be reset.

- Tip** ➤
- The day of the week is set automatically.
 - When Clock has not been set, --/--/-- --:-- appears for date and time in Call Log, etc.
 - To correct numbers, use 🕒 to move cursor and re-enter digits.
 - Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (see P.9-5).

Set Time Zone/Daylight Saving	Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

Default Time Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

Main Menu	Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Date & Time

Time Zone

Select **Set Time Zone** ➔ Press ● ➔ Use 🕒 to select a Time Zone ➔ Press ●

- If your zone is not preset, press 📧 **Custom** ➔ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ➔ Press ● ➔ Use 🕒 to select + or - ➔ Press 🕒 ➔ Enter time difference ➔ Press ●

Daylight Saving

Select **Daylight Saving** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **On** ➔ Press ●

- To cancel, select **Daylight Saving** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Off** ➔ Press ●
- Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

Date/Time Format	Change date/time format

Default Time Format: 24 Hour, Date Format: Y/M/D

Main Menu	Settings ➔ Phone Settings (📞) ➔ Date & Time

Time Format

Select **Time Format** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **24 Hour** or **12 Hour** ➔ Press ●

Date Format

Select **Date Format** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **D.M.Y**, **M-D-Y** or **Y/M/D** ➔ Press ●

Calendar Format

Select whether to start the week on Sunday or Monday

Default Sunday-Saturday

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Date & Time
▶ Calendar Format

Select **Sunday-Saturday** or **Monday-Sunday** ▶ Press (●)

User Dictionary

Entries (Japanese Only)

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

New Entry

Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ New Entry

Enter a word/phrase ▶ Press (●) ▶ **Enter a reading (keyword)** ▶ Press (●)

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.
 - Alternatively, in other text entry windows, press [Options] ▶ Select **Add to Dictionary** ▶ Press (●) ▶ Select the first character of text ▶ Press (●) ▶ Select the end point ▶ Press (●) ▶ Press (●) ▶ Enter a reading (keyword) ▶ Press (●) ▶ Press (●)

Edit/Delete

Edit or delete entries

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Saved Word List

Edit

Select a word/phrase ▶ Press (●) ▶ **Edit the word/phrase** ▶ Press (●) ▶ **Edit reading** ▶ Press (●) ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press (●)

Delete

Select a work/phrase ▶ Press [Delete] ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press (●)

812SH/813SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Download specialised 812SH/813SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (see **P.15-9**). Activate up to five dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

Acquire Dictionary

Activate downloaded dictionary

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select from Dictionary 1 to Dictionary 5 ▶ Press (●) ▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ Press (●)

- To replace dictionaries, select one and press (●) ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Press (●)

Note ▶ Some dictionary files may not be usable.

Cancel

Cancel dictionary

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► User
Dictionary ► Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ► Press [Envelope Icon] **Options** ► **Select**
Cancel ► **Press** [Enter Icon]

Info

View dictionary information

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► User
Dictionary ► Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ► Press [Envelope Icon] **Options** ► **Select Info**
► **Press** [Enter Icon]

■ Press [Enter Icon] to return.

Handset Security

Face Recognition

Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc. Match live face image with saved one to unlock. When another function is active, etc., Face Recognition window may not open right away. Cancel the function to open Face Recognition window.

Precautions for capturing portrait/scanning face:

- **Make sure your face is clearly visible; facial features may be obscured by hair, coloured glasses, masks, etc.**
- **Face should be lit evenly and brightly (avoid backlight and strong light).**

- Note** ►
- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
 - Handset Code is required to activate/cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code (see **P.9-28**) helps enhance security.
 - S! FeliCa is available even when Face Recognition is active.

Saving User Information

Save a name and portrait as well as a question and an answer to the question. In case recognition fails, enter the answer to unlock handset.

- Save up to five users (with up to five portraits each).
- If no question or answer is saved, enter Handset Code to unlock handset.

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Phone Settings* (👁) ► Locks ► Face Recognition ► User Registration

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press** ●
- 2 Select from *User 1* to *User 5* and press** ●
 - To edit user information, select a user ► Press ●
 - To delete users, select one ► Press [X] **Delete** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●
- 3 Select *User Name:* and press** ●

- 4 Enter name and press** ●
- 5 Select *Register Riddle:* and press** ●
- 6 Enter a question and press** ●
- 7 Select *Register Answer:* and press** ●
- 8 Enter the answer and press** ●
 - Capture and save portrait if not already saved (see below).
- 9 Press** [Y] **Save** to save

■ Saving Portraits

Save up to five portraits per user. Change location, face angle, accessory, brightness, etc. for each shot.

- Saving multiple portraits increases recognition accuracy. However, security will be compromised.
- A person's portraits can be saved to multiple users; this may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression; adjust face size (may not be saved if too small). Stay still until shooting is completed.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 above.

- 1 Select *Face Image:* and press** ●

2 Select from *Image 1* to *Image 5* and press **Capture**

-  To overwrite saved portrait, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
-  To delete portraits, select one ➔ Press  **Delete** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
- Deleting all portraits cancels Face Recognition.

3 Frame your face on Display and press

- Stay still until shooting is completed.
- If **Cannot Register. Please change the shooting condition.** appears, start over from Step 2.

4 Press **Yes**

Portrait is saved.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

Face Recognition is activated.

- To save more, repeat Steps 2 - 4.
- To save user information, press  then  **Save**.

Note ➤ Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with **Low(Mask)** (see **P.9-24** "Security Level").

Activating & Cancelling

- Save a user beforehand.
- Face Recognition is **Off** by default.

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ➔ *Phone Settings*  ➔ *Locks* ➔ *Face Recognition* ➔ *Switch On/Off*

1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

Tip ➤ Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc.

Scanning Face

Face Recognition window opens when handset is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc.

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover of Internal Camera with a soft cloth before use.
- When another function is active, etc., Face Recognition window may not open right away. Cancel the function to open Face Recognition window.

1 Face the Display

- To show operational tips, select **Panda** in Conductor Setting (see **P.9-23**).
- Handset is unlocked when your face matches saved portrait.

When Face Recognition Fails

■ **Under Pwd Key Lock.** appears. Follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 

- To retry Face Recognition, press  **Recog**.

■ When saved question appears, press , enter the answer and press .

- If the answer is incorrect, **Collate failure.** appears.
Press  to re-enter the answer, or follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press  ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

Press 

■ While handset is locked, press  to open contact information.
• Save contact information first (see **P.9-24** "Report").

Tip ➤ When wearing a mask, set Security Level (see **P.9-24**) to **Low(Mask)** to make your face recognisable. However, security will be compromised.

Face Recognition Settings

Conductor Setting

Show or hide operational tips during recognition

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Phone Settings  ➔ Locks ➔ Face Recognition ➔ Conductor Setting

Select **Off**, **Preview**, **Panda** or **Custom Screen** ➔
Press 

Off	Under Face Recognition. Please wait... appears.
Preview	Internal Camera Viewfinder appears as a guide
Panda	Panda graphic appears with operational tips
Custom Screen	Custom Screen (see P.9-9) graphic-based guidance appears

Security Level

Select accuracy level

Default Normal

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Locks ► Face Recognition ► Security Level

Select **High**, **Normal**, **Low** or **Low(Mask)** ► Press ●

High	Unsaved faces are least likely recognised by mistake; your face may be hard to recognise
Normal	Standard recognition accuracy
Low	Your face is most recognisable; unsaved faces are most likely recognised by mistake
Low (Mask)	Handset recognises faces with masks. (Accuracy is equal to that of Low .)

Report

Save contact information to open when Face Recognition fails (see P.9-23)

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Locks ► Face Recognition ► Report

Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► **Enter contact information** ► Press ●

- Enter up to 128 characters.

PIN

For more information on PIN, see P.1-6.

PIN Entry

Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (☺) ► Locks ► PIN Entry ► Switch On/Off

Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press ● ► **Enter PIN1** ► Press ●

PIN Lock

- PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. To cancel PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock, follow these steps.

Open a function requiring PIN1 or PIN2 ► **Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code)** ► Press ●
 ► **Enter new PIN1 or PIN2** ► Press ● ► **Re-enter PIN1 or PIN2** ► Press ●

- For information on Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code), contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-29).
- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked. (Count continues even if handset power is turned off.)
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.20-29).

Change PIN

Change PIN1 or PIN2

■ Activate PIN Entry first.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Locks

PIN1

Select **PIN Entry** ► Press (●) ► Select **Change PIN** ► Press (●) ► Enter current PIN1 ► Press (●) ► Enter new PIN1 ► Press (●) ► Re-enter new PIN1 ► Press (●)

PIN2

Select **Change PIN2** ► Press (●) ► Enter current PIN2 ► Press (●) ► Enter new PIN2 ► Press (●) ► Re-enter new PIN2 ► Press (●)

Handset Locks

Password Lock

Restrict access to handset functions

■ To unlock, enter Handset Code.
Default Off

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (📞) ► Locks ► Password Lock

Activating Lock when Handset is Closed

Select **Auto** ► Press (●) ► Enter Handset Code ► Press (●)

One Time Lock

Select **Once** ► Press (●) ► Enter Handset Code ► Press (●)

- Password Lock is cancelled once handset is unlocked.

Activating Lock when Handset is Turned On

Select **At Power On** ► Press (●) ► Enter Handset Code ► Press (●)

Cancelling

Choose **Off** ► Press (●) ► Enter Handset Code ► Press (●)

Tip ► Password Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

When Password Lock is Active

- In Standby, press (📞) for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, (●) for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock, (0) (📞) - (9) (📞) to enter Handset Code or (CLEAR/BACK) to edit Handset Code entry.
- During a call, press (📞) to end the call, press (📞) to show Options, (●) to toggle Loudspeaker on/off or switch Video Call images, (📞) to mute/unmute Microphone, (📞) to switch between callers in Call Waiting, (0) (📞) - (9) (📞) to enter Handset Code or (CLEAR/BACK) to edit Handset Code entry.
- When a call arrives, press (📞) to show Options. Answer calls by pressing (📞), (●) or keys for Any Key Answer (see P.2-6), or place callers on hold by pressing (📞). Press (📞) to forward incoming calls (when **No Answer** is set for Diverts).

Note ► Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Password Lock is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

IP Service Setting

Enable or disable Hot Status and Circle Talk

Default On

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (📞) → Locks → IP Service Setting

Choose **On** (enable) or **Off** → Enter Handset Code → Press ●

Phone Book Lock

Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information

Default Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (📞) → Locks → Phone Book Lock

Choose **On** → Press ● → Enter Handset Code → Press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** → Press ● → Enter Handset Code → Press ●

- Enter Handset Code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock to access Phone Book entries.

Note ► When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialling, including Speed Dial (see P.4-14).

Fixed Dialling No.

Allow calls only to designated numbers

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (📞) → Locks → Restrict Modes → Fixed Dialling No.

Activating/Cancelling Fixed Dialling No.

Select **Switch On/Off** → Press ● → Choose **On** → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ● → Enter PIN2 → Press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** → Press ● → Enter PIN2 → Press ●

Designating Numbers

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press ● → Select a list → Press ● → Enter PIN2 → Press ● → Select an entry → Press ● → Edit entry → Press ● → Press [Y] **Save**

Editing Lists

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press ● → Select a list → Press [✉] **Options** → Select **Edit** → Press ● → Enter PIN2 → Press ● → Select an entry → Press ● → Edit entry → Press ● → Press [Y] **Save**

Deleting Lists

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press ● → Select a list → Press [✉] **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press ● → Enter PIN2 → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ●

Note ►

- This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.
- To send SMS to designated numbers, save SMS Centre Number (+819066519300) to Fixed Dialling No. list. (Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.)

Packet Lock

Disable packet transmissions

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📶) ► Locks ►
Restrict Modes ► Packet Lock

Choose **On** ► Press ● ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●
► Enter PIN2 ► Press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ● ► Enter PIN2 ► Press ●

Note ► This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.

Opening Secret Entries

Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries.

Show Secret Data

Activate or cancel Show Secret Data

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► Phone Settings (📶) ► Locks ►
Show Secret Data

Choose **On** ► Press ● ► Enter Handset Code ►
Press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

Note ► Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/
schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret entries
may be compromised.

When Show Secret Data is Off

- Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret entries. Personal ringtones/ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret entries do not appear in Call Log or list of received messages.



Changing Handset Code

Chng Handset Code

Whenever necessary, change Handset Code

Default 9999

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Locks ▶ Chng Handset Code

Enter current Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter new Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Re-enter new Handset Code ▶ Press ●

Reset

Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Master Reset ▶ Reset Settings

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ●

- Phone Book entries, etc. are unaffected.
- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press ● to proceed.
 - S! Application is paused
 - Music Player is active
 - Bluetooth® is active
 - Infrared is active

Note ▶ Some default settings may not be restored.

Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Master Reset ▶ Reset All

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ●

- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press ● to proceed.
 - S! Application is paused
 - Music Player is active
 - Bluetooth® is active
 - Infrared is active

- Note ▶**
- Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
 - カスタムご紹介 in Data Folder (Custom Screens) and S! Applications are restored.
 - Reset All is disabled if IC Card (see P.17-2) data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand.

Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Vicemail/Divert	See P.13-4, P.13-2	Show My Number	See P.13-10
Call Waiting	See P.13-5	Call Barring	See P.13-7

International Call

Int'l Prefix

Save frequently used international prefix

Default 0046010

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call* (📞) ► Int'l Calling ► Int'l Prefix

Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► **Enter a prefix** ► Press ●

Country Codes

Change, add or delete Country Codes

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call* (📞) ► Int'l Calling ► Country Codes

Change

Select a country ► Press ● ► **Select Change** ► Press ● ► **Enter country name** ► Press ● ► **Enter country code** ► Press ●

Add

Select <empty> ► Press ● ► **Enter country name** ► Press ● ► **Enter country code** ► Press ●

Delete

Select a country ► Press ● ► **Select Delete** ► Press ● ► **Choose Yes** ► Press ●

Auto Add Code

Add a preset country code automatically when placing calls

Default Off/Country Code: 81 (Japan)

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call* (📞) ► Int'l Calling ► Auto Add Code

Activating/Deactivating

Select Switch On/Off ► Press ● ► **Choose On or Off** ► Press ●

Set Country Code

Select Country Code ► Press ● ► **Select a country** ► Press ●

■ To enter a country code, select **Enter Code** in Country Code list ► Press ● ► **Enter country code** ► Press ●

Note

When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included.

Auto Answer

Set handset to answer Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones or handsfree devices.

When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone (even in Manner mode).

- To avoid unintentional activation, cancel Auto Answer after use.
- Handsfree device Auto Answer tone varies by device.
- Ringtone/Auto Answer Tone Availability:

	Handset	Headphones	Handsfree Devices
Ringtone	Available ¹	Available	Available
Auto Answer Tone	Available	Available	_ ²

¹Not available in Manner mode.

²Varies by device.

Tip ▶ To set handset to answer Video Calls automatically, see **P.5-8 "Remote Monitor"**.

Switch On/Off Activate or cancel Auto Answer

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Auto Answer

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press** (●) ▶ **Select Switch On/Off** ▶ **Press** (●) ▶ **Choose On or Off** ▶ **Press** (●)

Answer Time

Adjust ring time between 1 and 30 seconds (Auto Answer waits to answer calls)

Default 5 seconds

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Auto Answer

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press** (●) ▶ **Select Answer Time** ▶ **Press** (●) ▶ **Enter time** ▶ **Press** (●)

Additional Settings

Minute Minder

Handset beeps once each minute during calls

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Minute Minder

Choose On (handset beeps) or Off ▶ **Press** (●)

- Handset beeps every minute.

Display Call Cost

Show or hide Call Cost after each call

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Disp. Time/Call
▶ Display Call Cost

Choose On (show) or Off ▶ **Press** (●)

Call Time Counter

Show or hide elapsed Call Time during a call

Default On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ▶ Disp. Time/Call
▶ Call Time Counter

Choose On (show) or Off ▶ **Press** (●)

Connectivity

Bluetooth®

Getting Started

Bluetooth® is a wireless technology that allows 812SH and 813SH to communicate with other 812SH and 813SH within ten metres or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, handsfree devices, etc.). In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following: Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications:

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver 2.0
Bluetooth® Profiles Supported	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2

Note ► Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

Precautions

- Bluetooth® connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.
- Bring handsets to within ten metres. Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.

Activating Bluetooth®

Activate Bluetooth® before receiving files or connecting handset to handsfree devices.

Bluetooth® is **Off** by default.

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth ►
Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press ●

📶 appears.

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

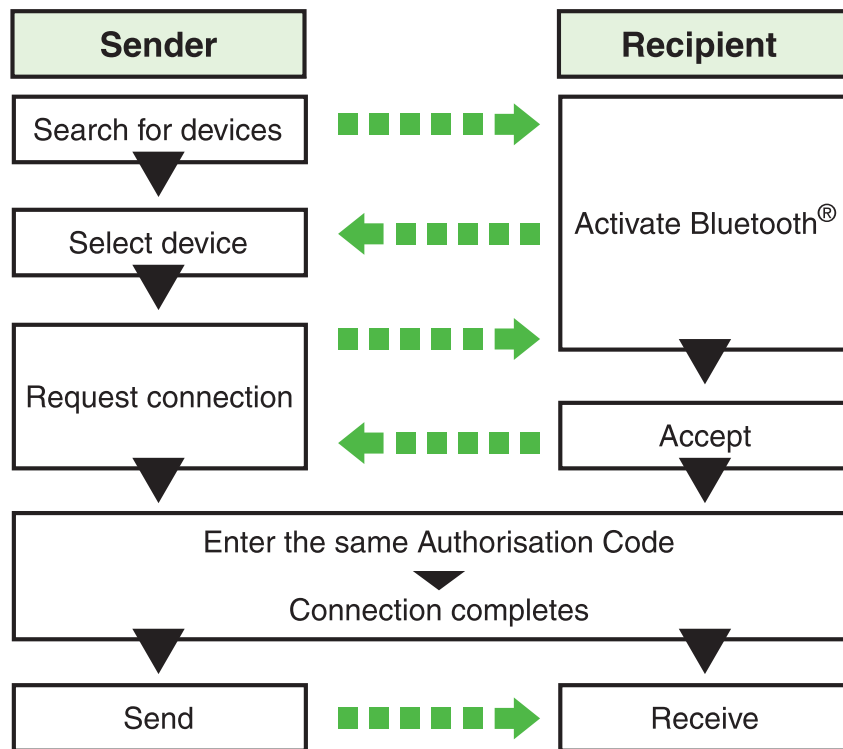
■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press ●

Note ► Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from other devices or to receive files; these functions are disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

Bluetooth® Connection

Activate Bluetooth® (see **P.10-2**) on recipient device. Connection starts when a request is received from the other device. (Authorisation Code may be required.)

Example



Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (4 to 16 digits) are specific for Bluetooth® connection. Pairing is possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.
 - Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth® devices for pairing.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth

1 Select **Search for Devices** and press ●

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)

- Device names appear with corresponding indicators (📶, etc.).
- Press **Y/Cancel** to cancel.

2 Select a device and press ● **Pairing**

■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press ●

3 Enter the same **Authorisation Code** (4 to 16 digits) for handset and the other device and press ●

When pairing is complete, **Pairing is successful.** appears.

- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

4 Press ●

Pairing with Handsfree Devices

- Start device search with handsfree devices for pairing.
Handset receives a connection request ➔ Choose Yes
➔ Press ● ➔ Enter Authorisation Code ➔ Press ●
 - Activate Bluetooth® (see **P.10-2**) on handset and set Visibility (see below) to **Show My Phone**.

Opening Paired Device List

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➔ *Connectivity* (📶) ➔ *Bluetooth*

1 Select **Paired Devices** and press ●

List of all paired devices appears.

- To open list of handsfree devices only, press 📶.
- To rename paired devices, select one ➔ Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select **Change Name** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter name (up to 16 characters) ➔ Press ●
- To delete paired devices, select one ➔ Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

Visibility

Make handset visible to other Bluetooth® devices.

- Set Visibility to **Hide My Phone** to cloak handset.
- Visibility is set to **Show My Phone** by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➔ *Connectivity* (📶) ➔ *Bluetooth* ➔ *My Device Settings* ➔ *Visibility*

1 Select **Show My Phone** or **Hide My Phone** and press ●

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)

- Note** ▶
- Bluetooth® transfers activate Offline Mode. Thus, transfers are disabled during calls, while receiving calls, using the Internet or Media Player, sending/receiving messages or accessing Server Mail. Offline Mode is cancelled after transfers.
 - Some files may not be saved correctly.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Calendar	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable due date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) are saved as No limit .
Text Templates	Available ²	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available ³	
Received Msg.	N/A ⁴	Available ⁵	
Sent Messages	N/A ⁴	Available	
Drafts	N/A ⁴	Available ⁶	
Templates	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

¹In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

²Only receiving files is supported.

³All File Transfers send all Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks; Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

⁴Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

⁵All File Transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 812SH and 813SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

⁶In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 812SH and 813SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

⁷Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

Note ►

- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
- Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
- Unsent Messages are not transferable.
- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
- Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (see **P.10-4** "Transferable Files").

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Send**, **Send Entry** or **Send My Card** and press 
- 3** Select **Via Bluetooth** and press 
 - When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.
 -  To send files to unpaired devices, select **More Devices** → Press  → Press  **Refresh** → Device search starts
- 4** Select a device and press 
 -  When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** → Press 
- 5** Prepare recipient device
- 6** Choose **Yes** and press 
 - Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
 -  When requested, enter Authorisation Code → Press 

Receiving

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** → **Connectivity** () → **Bluetooth** → Switch On/Off

- 1** Choose **On** and press 
 - Bluetooth® is activated.
- 2** When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears
 -  To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes** → Press  → Enter Authorisation Code → Press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 
 - Offline Mode is set.
- 4** Transfer starts and confirmation appears
 -  Press  **Cancel** to cancel.
 -  Press  to end.
- 5** Choose **Yes** and press  to save
 -  To cancel transfer, choose **No** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 
 -  For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card** → Press 

All File Transfer

Sending

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (📶) ► Bluetooth

1 Select **Send All** and press ●

- When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.

■ To send files to unpaired devices, select **More Devices** ► Press ● ► Press [✉] **Refresh** ► Device search starts

2 Select a device and press ●

■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press ●

3 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Offline Mode is set.

4 Enter Handset Code and press ●

5 Prepare recipient device

6 Select an item and press ●

Transfer starts.

- When requested, enter Authorisation Code ► Press ●
- For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press ●

Receiving

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (📶) ► Bluetooth ► Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press ●

Bluetooth® is activated.

2 When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears

■ To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes** ► Press ● ► Enter Authorisation Code ► Press ●

3 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Offline Mode is set.

4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

- Press [Y] **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press [⏏] to end.

5 Adding Files

1 Select **As New Items** and press ●

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- Press [Y] **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press [⏏] to end.

Overwriting Existing Files

1 Select **Delete All & Save** and press ●

2 Choose **Yes** and press ●

3 Enter Handset Code and press ●

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
- Press [Y] **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press [⏏] to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (📶) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press ●

Bluetooth® is activated.

2 When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears

- To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press ●

3 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, handset returns to Standby.

- Press [X] **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press [⏏] to end.

Connecting Handsfree Devices

Pair with handsfree devices beforehand (see **P.10-3**).

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (📶) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Paired Devices

1 Press ●

List of paired handsfree devices appears.

2 Select a device and press ●

The device is connected and ☒ (checked) appears.

- When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●
- To disconnect, select a device ▶ Press ●
- To rename paired devices, select one ▶ Press [⌵] **Options** ▶ Select **Change Name** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ●

Sound Output

- Switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices.

While talking on the phone, press [⌵] Options ▶

Select Transfer Audio ▶ Press ● ▶ Select To Phone or To Bluetooth ▶ Press ●

- Select **To Phone** to talk on handset.
- If **To Bluetooth** is selected, list of paired handsfree devices appears.

- Note** ►
- While talking on handsfree devices, adjust volume on the device.
 - Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.

- Tip** ►
- Devices marked with ☒ reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.
 - ☐ indicates that the device is not selected. When ☐ is set to the connected device, a confirmation appears.

Bluetooth® Settings

Device Name Specify a Bluetooth® name for handset

Default 812SH or 813SH

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth ► My Device Settings ► Device Name

Enter name ► Press ●

- Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictograms are not available.)

Bluetooth Timeout Set idle time after which Bluetooth® is cancelled

Default No Timeout

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth ► My Device Settings ► Bluetooth Timeout

Select time ► Press ●

- To cancel, select **No Timeout** ► Press ●

Handsfree Setting Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset

Default Handsfree Mode

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth ► My Device Settings ► Handsfree Setting

Choose Handsfree Mode or Private Mode ► Press ●

- When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of setting.

My Device Details Open Bluetooth®-related handset properties

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Bluetooth

Select My Device Details ► Press ●

Infrared

Getting Started

Infrared is a wireless technology that allows 812SH and 813SH to communicate with other 812SH and 813SH or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, etc.). In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following: Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

- 812SH and 813SH comply with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.
- Infrared transfers are disabled while sending/receiving mail or using the Internet.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.

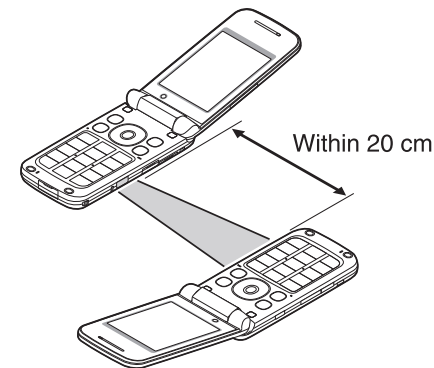
Tip ► When transfer fails, ***Device not found. Reconnect?*** appears. Take the precautions below then choose **Yes** and press **⬤** to try again.

Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (four digits) are specific for infrared transfers. All File Transfers are possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

Precautions

- Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimetres with no obstructions between handsets.



- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.

Transferring Files via Infrared

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)
High-Speed Infrared (see P.10-12)	Transfer JPEG files one at a time from Data Folder (Pictures or DCIM). Received files are saved to Pictures folder.

- Note** ►
- Transfers are disabled while using the Internet or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
 - Some files may not be saved in whole or part.
 - Only compatible devices receive files transferred via high-speed infrared.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.
Calendar	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable due date/time (0:00 AM on 1 January 2016 or later) are saved as No limit .

¹In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Text Templates	Available ²	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available ³	
Received Msg.	N/A ⁴	Available ⁵	
Sent Messages	N/A ⁴	Available	
Drafts	N/A ⁴	Available ⁶	
Templates	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

²Only receiving files is supported.

³All File Transfers send all Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks; Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

⁴Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

⁵All File Transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 812SH and 813SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

⁶In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 812SH and 813SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

⁷Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

- Note** ►
- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
 - Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
 - Unsent Messages are not transferable.
 - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
 - Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
 - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
 - Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
 - Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (see **P.10-11** "Transferable Files").

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Send**, **Send Entry** or **Send My Card** and press 
- 3** Select **Via Infrared** and press 

4 Prepare recipient device

5 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.

Transferring Images via High-Speed Infrared

- Follow these steps to send images to compatible devices.

Press  **➔ Select *Data Folder* ➔ Press**  **➔ Select *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➔ Press**  **➔ Select a file ➔ Press**  **(Long Press)**

- Only JPEG images are supported.
- Transfers are one-way; start regardless of recipient device status and end even if files are not received.
- For recipient's procedures, see "Receiving" below.

Receiving

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Connectivity** () ► **Infrared** ► **Switch On/Off**

- 1** Choose **On (3 min.)** and press 
Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.
 - Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- 2** When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears
 - High-speed infrared transfers activate Offline Mode.
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 
Offline Mode is set.

4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

- Press **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press to end.

5 Choose **Yes** and press to save

- To cancel transfer, choose **No** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
- For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card** ➔ Press
 - Files are automatically saved to handset or Memory Card depending on available memory.

Note ➤

- Handset must be in Standby to receive files; this function is disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/ Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.
- High-speed infrared transfer supports JPEG files only. Send up to 1.8 MB per transfer to 812SH or 813SH.

All File Transfer

Sending

Main Menu ➔ Settings ➔ **Connectivity** () ➔ Infrared

1 Select **Send All** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

3 Enter Handset Code and press

4 Select an item and press

5 Prepare recipient device

6 Enter Authorisation Code and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns.

- For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** ➔ Press

Receiving

Main Menu ➔ Settings ➔ **Connectivity** () ➔ Infrared ➔ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On (3 min.)** and press

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.

2 When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

4 Enter Authorisation Code and press

- Enter the same Authorisation Code as sender's.

5 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

- Press **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press to end.

6 Adding Files

1 Select **As New Items** and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- Press **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press to end.

Overwriting Existing Files

1 Select **Delete All & Save** and press 

2 Choose **Yes** and press 

3 Enter Handset Code and press 

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

 Press  **Cancel** to cancel.

 Press  to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Connectivity**  ► **Infrared** ► **Switch On/Off**

1 Choose **On (3 min.)** and press 

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.

2 When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears

3 Choose **Yes** and press 

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, handset returns to Standby.

- If the same folder name exists, received files are saved there.

 Press  **Cancel** to cancel.

 Press  to end.

Network Settings

See **P.2-16** for information on Select Service.

Select Network Select a Network to connect

Default Automatic

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Network Settings**  ► **Select Network**

Select Manual ► **Press**  ► **Select a Network** ► **Press** 

 To change Network automatically, select **Automatic** ► **Press** 

- Use default setting unless connecting to a specific Network.

Set Preferred Set priority of Networks to be selected when **Automatic** is set for Select Network

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Network Settings**  ► **Select Network** ► **Set Preferred**

Inserting Network

Select a place to insert ► **Press**  ► **Select Insert** ► **Press**  ► **Select a Network** ► **Press** 

- Network is inserted above the selected entry.

Adding Network to the End

Press ➔ Select **Add to End** ➔ Press ➔ Select a Network ➔ Press

Deleting Network

Select a Network ➔ Press ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press

Add, Edit & Delete	Add, edit or delete Networks
Main Menu	Settings ➔ Network Settings (📶) ➔ Select Network ➔ Add New Network

Adding Network

Select **Add** ➔ Press ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press ➔ Enter a Network code ➔ Press ➔ Enter name ➔ Press ➔ Press ➔ Select **Select NW Type** ➔ Press ➔ Select a Network type ➔ Press

- Add up to five Networks.
- After selecting **Add New Network** and pressing , Network list appears if Network has already been added. In this case, press again and perform above operations.
- Use up to three digits for country code and Network code, and up to 25 single-byte alphanumeric for name.

Editing Network

Select a Network ➔ Press ➔ Select **Change** ➔ Press ➔ Edit settings

- Edit in the same manner as in "Adding Network" above.

Deleting Network

Select a Network ➔ Press ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press

Network Info	Check Network Information
Main Menu	Settings ➔ Network Settings (📶)
	Select Network Info ➔ Press
Retrieve NW Info	Retrieve Network Information manually
Main Menu	Settings ➔ Network Settings (📶)
	Select Retrieve NW Info ➔ Press ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press

Location Info

URL Setting	Set URL of map information provider
Main Menu	Settings ➔ Network Settings (📶) ➔ Location Info ➔ URL Setting

Select **URL** ➔ Press

- To view complete URLs, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Display** ➔ Press
- To edit URLs, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Edit** ➔ Press ➔ Edit URL ➔ Press
 - Default URL cannot be edited.
- To delete URLs, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 - Default URL cannot be deleted.
- To add URLs, select **<empty>** ➔ Press ➔ Enter URL ➔ Press

Datum On/Off

Select whether to send Location Information automatically upon request

Default On

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Network Settings* (📶) ► Location Info
► Datum On/Off

Choose *On* (send) or *Off* ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ⬇️

Location Property

Set Location Information confirmation parameters

Default Always Confirm

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Network Settings* (📶) ► Location Info
► Location Property

Select *Always Confirm*, *Send* or *Do not Send* ► Press ⬇️ **► Enter Handset Code ► Press** ⬇️

Memory Card

Memory Card

812SH and 813SH are compatible with microSD™ Memory Card.

- Format a new microSD™ Memory Card for use with handset (see **P.11-4**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.

Keep Memory Card out of children's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.

Note ►

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Tip ►

To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Cards.
For information on compatibility with microSD™ Memory Cards, access the following Website:

- From Handset
Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (Japanese only)
- From PC
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
(SHARP ケータイ daSH is available in Japanese only.)

Precautions

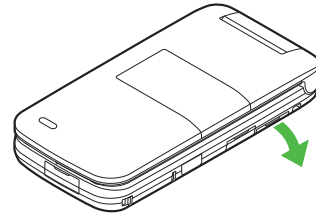
- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Cards.
- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on Memory Card. Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Do not expose Memory Card to static electricity or electrical noise.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

Inserting & Removing Memory Card

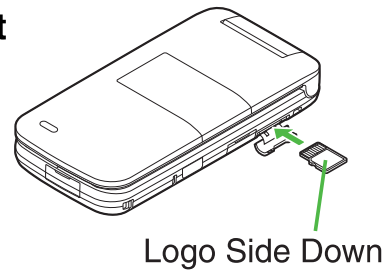
Inserting

Turn handset power off.

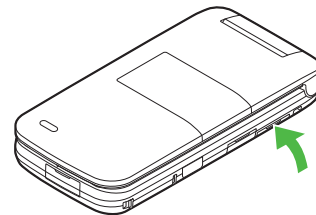
1 Open cover



2 With logo side down, insert card until it clicks.



3 Close cover

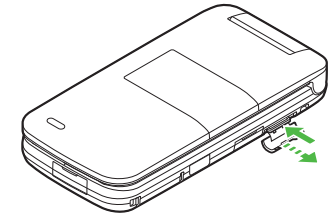


Removing

Turn handset power off.

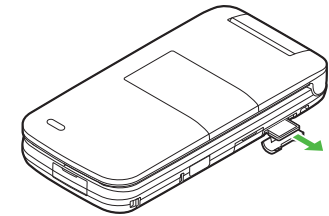
1 Open cover and gently push down on card

- With a light push, card pops out.

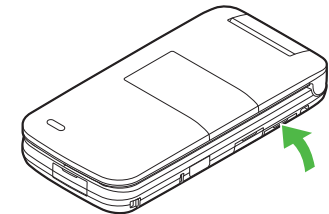


2 Remove card

- Using the notch on its edge, pull card straight out.



3 Close cover



- Note** ►
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
 - When  appears, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.
 - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card slot; may damage handset/card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

Tip ► Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary by card size and the amount of information saved.

Format Card

When using a new microSD™ Memory Card, format it on handset for use with handset before trying to save files, etc.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity* (📶) ► *Memory Card* ► *Format Card*

1 Choose Yes and press (●)

Offline Mode is set.

2 Enter Handset Code and press (●)

3 Choose Yes and press (●)

- Note** ►
- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
 - An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 812SH or 813SH.

Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset in case of accidental loss/alteration of data.

- All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)
- The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:

■ Received Msg.	■ Drafts	■ Sent Messages
■ Templates	■ Phone Book	■ Contact Groups
■ Calendar	■ Tasks	■ Text Templates
■ Bookmarks	■ User Dictionary	■ My Pictograms
■ Content Keys		
- Templates and My Pictograms are not copied as a single file.
- Unsent Messages are not transferable.
- Select an item to back up or transfer all at once.

Tip ► Copy handset entries as backups, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

Precautions

- Backup/Restore is not available when battery is low or while handset is in use.
- Transmissions are blocked during Backup or Restore.
- When restoring data from Memory Card, select an item; when prompted, delete corresponding data on handset to proceed.
- Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.
- Large Bookmarks may not restore correctly.
- Phone Book entry Picture settings may be lost depending on image; copy images separately and re-assign to entries after Phone Book is restored.
- S! Mail Notices are restored as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- To access backed up content (excluding Templates and My Pictograms) restore it to handset.
- Use Backup and Restore for Content Keys.
 - Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
 - While Keys are on Memory Card, files are inaccessible.
 - Restoring Keys to handset does not overwrite existing ones.
- Restoring Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on other SoftBank handsets to handset.
 - Messages may not transfer depending on the size.
 - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
 - Sky Mail may transfer as S! Mail depending on the SoftBank handset used for backup.
- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on handset to other SoftBank handsets.
 - Messages in Spam Folder are saved as standard received messages.
 - SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved or only the first entered recipient remains if transferred from Drafts.

Handset to Memory Card

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (📶) ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Backup/Restore* ▶ *Backup*

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press** ●
- 2 Choose Yes and press** ●
Offline Mode is set.
- 3 Select an item and press** ●
 - For **Select All**, **Phone Book** or **Content Keys** confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press ●
 - To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Content Keys).

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (📶) ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Backup/Restore* ▶ *Restore*

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press** ●
 - 2 Choose Yes and press** ●
Offline Mode is set.
 - 3 Select an item and press** ●
 - Some items may not be selected.
 - 4 Select a file and press** ●
 - If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.
Example: 070214XX indicates the file was transferred on 14 February 2007. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)
 - For **Select All**, repeat Step 4 for each item.
 - To delete files on Memory Card, select one ▶ Press  **Delete** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●
 - 5 Choose Yes and press** ●
 - To cancel, press  **Cancel**.
 - For **Select All**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press ●
- Tip** ▶ For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on handset are overwritten as **No limit**.

Additional Functions

Memory Status Check Memory Card memory status

Main Menu ► *Data Folder* ► *Memory Status*

Select **Memory Card** ► Press

- A portion of Memory Card is reserved for storing copyright information, etc.

SD Local Contents Open HTML files on Memory Card to access Internet sites

- Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity*  ► *Memory Card* ► *SD Local Contents*

Select a title ► Press

- HTML files for SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use, a warning message appears. Delete files and try again.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Selecting Images & Prints

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity*  ► *Memory Card* ► *DPOF* ► *Number of Copies* ► *For Each Picture*

1 Select a folder and press

Thumbnails appear.

2 Use to select an image and press **Count**

■ To open images, select one ► Press 

- Press  to return.

3 Enter a number of copies to print (00 - 99) and press

■ To return, press  ► Press 

■ To cancel, enter **00** ► Press 

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images

5 Press Done

- Note** ►
- DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.
 - Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
 - Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
 - If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (see right) and start over with settings.

Print Settings

For All Pictures

Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

Default 0 Copy each

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Memory Card ► DPOF ► Number of Copies ► For All Pictures

Enter a number (01 - 99) ► Press (●)

Add Date

Add dates to prints

Default Off

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Memory Card ► DPOF ► Settings ► Add Date

Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Index Print

Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails)

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Memory Card ► DPOF ► Settings ► Index Print

Choose **On** (require) or **Off** ► Press (●)

Check Settings

View current print settings

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Memory Card ► DPOF

Select **Check Settings** ► Press (●)

Reset Settings

Reset DPOF settings

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Connectivity** (📶) ► Memory Card ► DPOF

Select **Reset Settings** ► Press (●) ► Choose **Yes** ► Press (●)

Mass Storage

Activate Mass Storage and connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low, when an S! Application is paused or while Music Player is active.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (📶)

1 Select **Mass Storage** and press ●

Calling not available during operation, OK? appears.

2 Choose **Yes** and press ●

3 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable

- If it is already connected, remove it then reconnect it.

4 To exit, press **Cancel**

5 Choose **Yes** and press ●

- Safely remove handset (recognised as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Tools

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- Open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (🕒)

1 Select **Calendar** and press (🕒)

Calendar of the current month opens.

- If Clock is unset, use (🕒) to select a Time Zone ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Enter date/time ➔ Press (🕒)
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press [📧] **Options** ➔ Select **Help** ➔ Press (🕒)
- Press (🕒) to return.



Calendar Window
(Month View)

Key Assignments

Key	Month/2Month View	Week View
[X] (🕒)	Open the previous month ¹	Open the previous week
[#] (🕒)	Open the next month ¹	Open the next week
[0] (🕒)	Help	
[2] (🕒)	Stamp ²	-
[4] (🕒)	Set Colour (By Date)	
[5] (🕒)	Go to (Today)	

¹In 2Month View, view changes by two months.

²Available in Month View.

Key	Month/2Month View	Week View
[6] (🕒)	Find	
[8] (🕒)	Go to (Enter Date)	
(🕒)	Select the previous/next week ¹	Select the previous/next time block
(🕒)	Select date	

¹In 2Month View, view changes by two months.

Default View

Set to open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View or Week View

Default Month View

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (🕒) ➔ **Calendar**

Press [📧] **Options** ➔ Select **Calendar Settings** ➔
Press (🕒) ➔ Select **Default View** ➔ Press (🕒) ➔
Select a type ➔ Press (🕒)

Set Colour

Set Calendar date colour

Default Sunday (and holiday): Red, Saturday: Blue, Others: Black

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (🕒) ➔ **Calendar**

By Days of the Week

Press [📧] **Options** ➔ Select **Calendar Settings** ➔
Press (🕒) ➔ Select **Set Colour** ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Select
By Week ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Select a day ➔ Press (🕒) ➔
Select a colour ➔ Press (🕒)

By Date

Select a day ➔ Press [📧] **Options** ➔ Select **Calendar Settings** ➔
Press (🕒) ➔ Select **Set Colour** ➔ Press (🕒) ➔
Select **By Date** ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press (🕒)

- To use the colour set for the day of the week, select **No Setting** ➔ Press (🕒)

- To reset, press [📧] **Options** ➔ Select **Calendar Settings** ➔
Press (🕒) ➔ Select **Set Colour** ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Select **Reset Colour** ➔
Press (🕒) ➔ Select an option ➔ Press (🕒) ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press (🕒)

Set Holiday

Remove/restore preset holidays or save additional holidays

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (🕒) ▶ Calendar

Removing/Restoring Holidays

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Set Holiday** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Use [🕒] to select **Set My Holidays** or **Set Public Holidays** ▶ Select a holiday ▶ Press [⬇] to check or uncheck

■ To check or uncheck all, press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Check All** or **Uncheck All** ▶ Press [⬇]

Saving Additional Holidays

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Set Holiday** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Use [🕒] to select **Set My Holidays** ▶ Select <empty> ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Enter date ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select frequency ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Press [📌] **Save**

Editing Additional Holidays

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Set Holiday** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Use [🕒] to select **Set My Holidays** ▶ Select a holiday ▶ Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Edit** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Name:** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Date:** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Enter date ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select frequency ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Press [📌] **Save**

Tip ▶

- Preset holidays cannot be deleted or edited.
- Save up to ten additional holidays.

Stamp

Create new entry quickly by entering a stamp

■ Available in Month View.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (🕒) ▶ Calendar

Select a date ▶ Press [2 か ABC] ▶ Select a stamp ▶ Press [⬇]

Tip ▶ To edit the entry, see P.12-7.

Alarm Settings

Select Alarm Volume, Vibration and Manner Setting

Default Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Off, Manner Setting: Do not Ring

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (🕒) ▶ Calendar

Alarm Volume

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Alarm Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Alarm Volume:** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Use [🔊] to adjust level ▶ Press [⬇]

Vibration

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Alarm Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Vibration:** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** ▶ Press [⬇]

Manner Setting

Press [📧] [Options] ▶ Select **Alarm Settings** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Manner Setting:** ▶ Press [⬇] ▶ Select **Ring** or **Do not Ring** ▶ Press [⬇]

■ For **Ring**, choose **Yes** ▶ Press [⬇]

Saving Entries

Organise daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule.
Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (see P.12-8).

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☺) ► Calendar

- 1 Select a day and press ●
- 2 Select <Add New Entry> and press ●
- 3 Enter subject and press ●
 - Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.
- 4 Enter start date/time and press ●
 - For all-day entries, enter date and press ☐ (press again to cancel), then press ● and skip ahead to Step 7.
- 5 Select **End:** and press ●
- 6 Enter end date/time and press ●
- 7 Select **Category:** and press ●
- 8 Select a category and press ●
 - To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 13. For all-day entries, set Repeat (see P.12-6) and skip ahead to Step 13.
- 9 Select **Reminder:** and press ●
- 10 Select **Reminder Time:** and press ●

- 11 Select from **At Start Time to 1 hour before** and press ●

- For custom Reminder Time, select **Other** ► Press ● ► Enter date/time ► Press ●
- To set tone/video and duration, see P.12-5.

- 12 Press ☑ OK

- If OK does not appear, press CLEAR BACK ☐.
- Repeat: see P.12-6

- 13 Select **Location:** and press ●

- 14 Enter location and press ●

- Enter up to 16 characters.

- 15 Select **Description:** and press ●

- 16 Enter schedule details and press ●

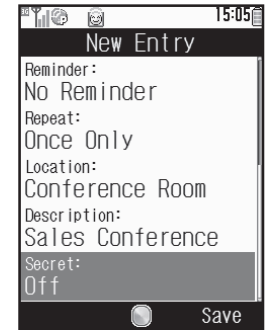
- Enter up to 128 characters.
- Secret: see P.12-6

- 17 Press ☑ Save

The entry is saved.

Note ► When entries are transferred to other devices, date/time or other information may appear different depending on the recipient device.

Tip ► ☑ (Reminder set) or ☐ (Reminder unset) appears on scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)



New Entry Window

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.9-3**). However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder

Press **Y**, **Stop**, **⏏**, **CLEAR/BACK** or **⏮**.

Opening Entries

While Reminder is activated, press **⏏**.

- Tip ►**
- If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder.
 - Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Calendar Options

Follow these steps after Step 12 on **P.12-4**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone/Video

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select Reminder: ► Press **⏏** ► **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ► Press **⏏** ► **Select Preset Sounds** ► Press **⏏** ► **Select a tone** ► Press **⏏** ► Press **Y** **OK**

■ To play tones, select one and press **Y** **Play**.
■ Press **Y** **Stop** to stop.

Data Folder Files

Select Reminder: ► Press **⏏** ► **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ► Press **⏏** ► **Select Ring Songs·Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones** ► Press **⏏** ► **Select a file** ► Press **⏏** ► Press **Y** **OK**

■ To play files, select one and press **Y** **Play**.
■ Press **CLEAR/BACK** to stop.

Duration

Set how long Reminder operates

Default 10 seconds

Select Reminder: ► Press **⏏** ► **Select Duration:** ► Press **⏏** ► **Select time** ► Press **⏏** ► Press **Y** **OK**

■ For custom Duration, select **Other** ► Press **⏏** ► Enter time ► Press **⏏** ► Press **Y** **OK**

Repeat

Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event

Default Once Only

Once Only Schedule

Select **Repeat**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Once Only** ➔ Press ●

Repetitive Schedule

Select **Repeat**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select from **Day to Every Year** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) ➔ Press ●

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **Month**, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.
- Repeat time is not available for **Every Year**; the schedule is repeated until deleted.
- Set Repeat time to **00** to repeat until deleted.

Secret

Restrict access to entries

Default Off

Select **Secret**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press ●

- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27) to open/edit Secret entries.

Opening Entries

Main Menu ▶ Tools ➔ Tools 1 (👁️) ➔ Calendar

1 Select a date and press ●

- Alternatively, to specify date, press ☑ Options ➔ Select **Go to** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Enter Date** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter date ➔ Press ●
- Alternatively, to open current date, press ☑ Options ➔ Select **Go to** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Today** ➔ Press ●

2 Select an entry and press ●

- To send the entry via S! Mail, press ☑ Options ➔ Select **Send** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **As Message** ➔ Press ● ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7.)

3 Press CLEAR/BACK to return**Memory Status**

- After Step 1 on the left, press ☑ Options ➔ Select **Memory Status** ➔ Press ●

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, open Calendar and follow these steps.
Press ☑ Options ➔ Select **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ●
- Secret entries are hidden next time Calendar is opened.

Searching Entries by Subject

Main Menu ▶ Tools ➔ Tools 1 (👁️) ➔ Calendar

- Press ☑ Options
- Select **Find** and press ●
- Enter search text and press ●
 - Enter up to 32 characters.
- Select an entry and press ●

Editing Entries

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

- 1** Select a date and press ●
- 2** Select an entry and press ☐ **Options**
- 3** Select *Edit* and press ●
- 4** Select an item and press ●
 - For details, see procedure for saving entries.
- 5** When finished editing, press ☐ **Save**

Deleting Entries

**This Appointment/
All This Day** Delete one entry or all entries of the day

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

One Entry

Select a date ► Press ● ► Select an entry ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *This Appointment* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

All Entries of the Day

Select a date ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *All This Day* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

**All This Week/
Up to Last Week**

In Week View, delete all entries in the week or up to the end of the previous week

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

Week

Select a week ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *All This Week* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

Up to the End of Previous Week

Select a week ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *Up to Last Week* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

**All This Month/
Up to Last Month**

In Month View, delete all entries in the month or up to the end of the previous month

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

Month

Select a month ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *All This Month* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

Up to the End of Previous Month

Select a month ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *Up to Last Month* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

**All This
2Months**

Delete all entries in two months on Display

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

Select two months ► Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *All This 2Months* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

**All
Appointments**

Delete all entries

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 1* (☺) ► *Calendar*

Press ☐ **Options** ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *All Appointments* ► Press ● ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

Deleting Repetitive Entries

■ A confirmation appears except for **All Appointments**. To delete, follow these steps.

Choose Yes ➔ Press ●

- To retain repetitive entries, choose **No ➔ Press** ●

Tasks

Save event with deadlines.

- Check completed tasks (see **P.12-10**).
- Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (see **P.12-4**).

Saving Entries

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ➔ **Tools 1** (☺) ➔ **Tasks**

- 1 Select <Add New Entry> and press** ●
- 2 Enter subject and press** ●
 - Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.
- 3 Enter due date/time and press** ●
 - To set no limit, press ☑ (press again to cancel), then press ● and skip ahead to Step 8.
 - To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 8.
- 4 Select *Reminder:* and press** ●

- 5 Select *Reminder Time:* and press** ●

- 6 Select from *At Due Time to 1 hour before* and press** ●

■ For custom Reminder Time, select **Other** ➔ Press ● ➔

Enter date/time ➔ Press ●

■ To set tone/video and duration, see **P.12-9**.

- 7 Press** ☑ **OK**

- 8 Select *Description:* and press** ●

- 9 Enter task details and press** ●

- Enter up to 128 characters.

■ Secret: see **P.12-9**

- 10 Press** ☑ **Save**

The entry is saved.



New Entry Window

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.9-3**).

However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder

■ Press **Stop**, , or .

Opening Entries

■ While Reminder is activated, press .

- Tip ►**
- If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder.
 - Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Task Options

Follow these steps after Step 7 on **P.12-8**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone/Video

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select Reminder: ► Press ► **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ► Press ► **Select Preset Sounds** ► Press ► **Select a tone** ► Press ► Press **OK**

■ To play tones, select one and press **Play**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

Data Folder Files

Select Reminder: ► Press ► **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ► Press ► **Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones** ► Press ► **Select a file** ► Press ► Press **OK**

■ To play files, select one and press **Play**.

■ Press to stop.

Duration

Set how long Reminder operates

Default 10 seconds

Select Reminder: ► Press ► **Select Duration:** ► Press ► **Select time** ► Press ► Press **OK**

■ For custom Duration, select **Other** ► Press ► Enter time ► Press ► Press **OK**

Secret

Restrict access to entries

Default Off

Select Secret: ► Press ► **Choose On or Off** ► Press

- Activate Show Secret Data (see **P.9-27**) to open/edit Secret entries.

Alarm Settings

- Select Alarm Volume setting.
In Task list, select an entry ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Alarm Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Alarm Volume:** ➔ Press ➔ Use to adjust level ➔ Press
- Select Vibration setting.
In Task list, select an entry ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Alarm Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Vibration:** ➔ Press ➔ Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** ➔ Press
- Select Manner mode ringer setting.
In Task list, select an entry ➔ Press Options ➔ Select **Alarm Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Manner Setting:** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Ring or Do not Ring** ➔ Press
 - For **Ring**, choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Opening Entries

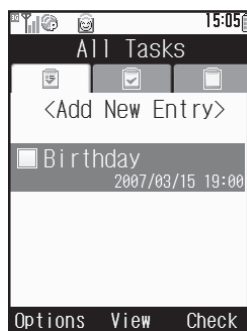
Main Menu ► Tools ➔ Tools 1 ()

1 Select **Tasks** and press

- To open completed (checked) entries, use to select (Completed Tasks).
- To open uncompleted (unchecked) entries, use to select (Incomplete Tasks).

2 Select an entry and press

- To send the entry via S! Mail, press Options ➔ Select **Send** ➔ Press ➔ Select **As Message** ➔ Press ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7.)



3 Press to return

Completed Tasks

- To mark completed, follow these steps after Step 1 on the left.
Select an unchecked entry () ➔ Press ➔ Press
 - To cancel checks, select a checked entry () ➔ Press ➔ Press

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.
After Step 1 on the left, press Options ➔ Select **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Press ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press
 - Secret entries are hidden next time Task list is opened.

Memory Status

- After Step 1 on the left, press Options ➔ Select **Memory Status** ➔ Press

Searching Entries by Subject

Main Menu ► Tools ➔ Tools 1 () ➔ Tasks

1 Press Options

2 Select **Find** and press

3 Enter search text and press

- Enter up to 32 characters.

4 Select an entry and press

Editing Entries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☺) ► Tasks

1 Select an entry and press Options

2 Select *Edit* and press ●

3 Select an item and press ●

• For details, see procedure for saving entries.

4 When finished editing, press Save

Deleting Entries

Delete

Delete one entry

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☺) ► Tasks

Select an entry ► Press Options ► Select *Delete*
► Press ● ► Select *This Task* ► Press ● ►
Choose Yes ► Press ●

All Tasks/
All Comp. Tasks

Delete all tasks or all completed tasks

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☺) ► Tasks

All Tasks

Press Options ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ►
Select *All Tasks* ► Press ● ► Enter Handset Code
► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

All Completed Tasks

Press Options ► Select *Delete* ► Press ● ►
Select *All Comp. Tasks* ► Press ● ► Choose Yes
► Press ●

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☺) ► Alarms

1 Select -- : -- and press ●

2 Enter time and press ●

■ Alarm Options: see P.12-13

3 Select *Repeat:* and press ●

4 *Daily*

1 Select *Every Day* and press ●

Specified Day of the Week

1 Select *Selected Days* and press ●

■ To select all, press Options ► Select *Check All* ► Press ● ► Skip ahead to Step 4

2 Select a day of the week and press ●

The day is set and ☒ appears.

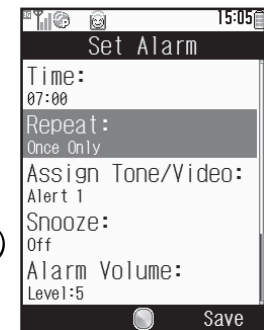
• To cancel, highlight the selected day and press ●.

3 Repeat Step 2 to select more

4 Press OK when finished

One Time Alarm

1 Select *Once Only* and press ●



Alarm Settings

5 Press **Save**

Alarm is set.

- For more settings, start over from Step 1 in "Setting Alarm" on P.12-11.

6 Press **to exit**

Handset returns to Standby and  appears.

For Manner Mode

- Select Manner mode ringer setting.

After Step 1 in "Setting Alarm" on P.12-11, select *Settings* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *For Manner Mode* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Ring or Do not Ring* ➔ Press  ➔ For *Ring*, choose *Yes* ➔ Press 

For World Clock

- Set Alarm for World Clock (see P.12-14) as follows:

After Step 1 in "Setting Alarm" on P.12-11, select *Settings* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Link To World Clk* ➔ Press  ➔ Choose *On or Off* ➔ Press 

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see P.9-3). However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Alarm

- Press  **Stop**, ,  or .

- Alarm activates only when handset is on at Alarm Time.

Snooze

- When Snooze (see P.12-13) is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval.

- Accept incoming calls. End the call to reactivate Snooze.
- If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is cancelled.

- To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.

Press  **Stop,  or  ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press **

- Snooze is cancelled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

Tip ►

- If Alarm Time arrives during a call or while recording video, no tone will sound. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.
- In Manner mode, volume depends on ***For Manner Mode*** setting (***Do not Ring*** by default).
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. When Snooze is unset, Information window opens after the call ends.

Alarm Options

Follow these steps after Step 2 in "Setting Alarm" on P.12-11. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone/Video

Set a tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time

Default Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select **Assign Tone/Video**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Preset Sounds** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a tone ➔ Press ●

■ To play tones, select one and press [Play].

■ Press [Stop] to stop.

Data Folder Files

Select **Assign Tone/Video**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Ring Songs·Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a file ➔ Press ●

■ To play files, select one and press [Play].

■ Press [CLEAR/BACK] to stop.

Custom Screen

Set Custom Screen tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time

Select **Assign Tone/Video**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Custom Screen** ➔ Press ●

■ To play files, select Custom Screen and press [Play].

■ Press [Stop] to stop.

- **Custom Screen** is selectable when compatible Custom Screen is active.

Snooze

Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time

Default Off

Select **Snooze**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select an interval ➔ Press ●

■ For custom intervals, select **Other** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter interval ➔ Press ●

Alarm Volume

Set volume from seven levels

Default Level 5

Select **Alarm Volume**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Use [Volume] to adjust level ➔ Press ●

Vibration

Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time

Default Off

Select **Vibration**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** ➔ Press ●

- For details on **Link to Sound**, see P.9-15 "Vibration".

Duration

Set how long Alarm operates

Default 10 seconds

Select **Duration**: ➔ Press ● ➔ Select duration ➔ Press ●

■ For custom Duration, select **Other** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter time ➔ Press ●

Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm

Switch Off

Cancel Alarm and retain the settings

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☺) ▶ *Alarms*

Select an entry ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶ Select **Switch Off** ▶ Press (●)

- 📢 disappears.
- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

Switch On

Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☺) ▶ *Alarms*

Select an entry ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶ Select **Switch On** ▶ Press (●)

- To change settings, select an entry ▶ Press (●) ▶ Edit settings
- For details, see procedure for saving entries.

Deleting Alarm

Reset Alarm

Delete Alarm settings one by one

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☺) ▶ *Alarms*

Select an entry ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶ Select **Reset Alarm** ▶ Press (●) ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press (●)

Clear All

Delete all Alarm settings

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☺) ▶ *Alarms*

Select an entry ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶ Select **Clear All** ▶ Press (●) ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press (●) ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press (●)

World Clock

Display local date/time (see **P.9-18**) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- Select from preset Time Zones or specify a new one; enter area name and time difference between new and local areas.
- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see **P.9-5** "Clock/Calendar".
- Time Zone is set to **Tokyo** by default.

Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving

Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☺) ▶ *World Clock*

1 Press (●)

2 *Time Zone*

1 Select **Set Time Zone** and press (●)

2 Use (☺) to specify an area and press (●)

- To add Time Zone, press [Envelope] **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press (●) ▶ Use (☺) to select + or - ▶ Press (☺) ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press (●)

Daylight Saving

1 Select **Daylight Saving** and press (●)

2 Choose **On** and press (●)

- To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press (●)

Opening World Clock

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (🕒)

1 Select **World Clock** and press ●

Local date/time and the date/time of another area in the world appear.

Tip ►

- To change local Time Zone, see **P.9-18**.
- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, select **World Clock (L)**, **World Clock (S)**, **World Clk+1mo.** or **World Clk+2mos.** for Clock/Calendar (see **P.9-5**).

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (🕒)

1 Select **Calculator** and press ●

Calculator opens.

- Alternatively, enter digits in Standby and press  to open Calculator.
- Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table (see right) for calculation.
- To copy the result, press  **Options** ► Select **Copy** ► Press ●

+ (Add)		CM (Clear Memory)	
- (Subtract)		RM (Recall Memory)	
x (Multiply)		M+ (Add Memory)	
÷ (Divide)		. (Decimal)	
= (Equal)		+/- (Switch)	
C·CE (Clear)		% (Percent)	

¹While **0** appears, press to return to Tools 1 menu.

²Press  **Options** and select %.

2 Press to exit

Money Converter

- To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Money Converter** ► Press ● ► Select **Exchange Rate** ► Press ● ► Select **Domestic or Foreign** ► Press ● ► Enter rate ► Press ●

- Exchange rate is **1** for both conversions by default.

- To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps.

Enter amount of money and press  **Options** ► Select **Money Converter** ► Press ● ► Select **To Domestic or To Foreign** ► Press ●

- Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

Tip ►

- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
- Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Voice Recorder

Use Microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory Card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

- Modes:

	Recording Time	Storage Media
For Message	Up to three minutes (attachable to S! Mail)	Handset or Memory Card ¹
Extended Voice	Up to 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds	Memory Card ²

¹Specify storage media before recording, or set handset to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted.

²Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

- **For Message** is set by default.

Preparation

- When battery is low, Voice Recorder does not activate. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

Recording

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (📞)

1 Select **Voice Recorder** and press ●

- To switch mode, press [Options] ► Select **Record Time** ► Press ● ► Select **For Message** or **Extended Voice** ► Press ●

- To switch storage media, see P.12-17.

2 Press ●

Recording starts.

3 **For Message**

1 Press ● to stop

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.
- To play the recording, select **Playback** ► Press ●
 - Press ● to pause.
 - Press [CLEAR/BACK] to return.
- To start over without saving, press [CLEAR/BACK] ► Repeat from Step 2
- To send via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ► Press ●
 - Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7.)
 - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ► Press ●

2 Select **Save and** press ●

Recording is saved to handset or Memory Card.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ► Press ●

Extended Voice

1 Press ● to stop

Recording is saved to Memory Card.

- Note** ▶
- Avoid shocks to handset; may cause noise or skipping.
 - Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

- Tip** ▶
- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.
 - Attach saved Voice file or record voice directly from Mail Composition windows (see **P.14-10**).

Playback

Play sounds from Speaker, or use Headphones.

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 2** (🎧) ▶ **Voice Recorder**

- 1 Press** [Options] **Options**
- 2 Select *Ring Songs·Tones* and press** [Enter]
 To switch between handset and Memory Card, press [Options]
 ▶ Select ***Change to Phone*** or ***Change to Memory Card*** ▶
 Press [Enter]
- 3 Select a file and press** [Enter]
 Playback starts.
 Press [Volume Up] (up) or [Volume Down] (down) to adjust volume.

Deleting Files

- Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left.
Select a file ▶ **Press** [Options] **Options** ▶ **Select *Delete*** ▶
Press [Enter] ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press** [Enter]

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
- A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Recording Setting

Save Recording To Select storage media for ***For Message***
 [Default] Phone Memory

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 2** (🎧) ▶ **Voice Recorder**

- Press** [Options] **Options** ▶ **Select *Save Recording To*** ▶
Press [Enter] ▶ **Select *Phone Memory, Memory Card* or *Ask Each Time*** ▶ **Press** [Enter]
- Set to ***Ask Each Time*** to select media after every recording.

Document Viewer

Open documents via Data Folder, Internet, S! Mail, Bluetooth® or infrared.

- Supported File Formats:
 - PDF (.pdf)
 - Microsoft Excel (.xls)
 - Microsoft Word (.doc)
 - Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt)
- Some files may take time to open or may not appear correctly. (Complicated designs, special characters in file names, password-protected, language other than Japanese or English used, etc.)
- On PCs, save documents to this Memory Card directory:
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/MY Items/OTHER DOCUMENTS
- Open documents of up to 1 MB each. (Some documents may not open depending on content.)

Data Folder Files

Main Menu ► *Tools* ► *Tools 2* (☺) ► *Document Viewer*

1 Select a file and press ●

Internet Files

1 Open a page, select a file and press ●

Tip ► Download files of up to 300 KB via Yahoo! Keitai or up to 500 KB via PC Site Browser.

Attachments

- 1** In a Messaging folder, select a message and press ●
- 2** Select a file and press ●

Key Assignments

●	Whole Page	Zoom to view the whole page
⌂	Vertical/Horizontal	Rotate page 90 degrees counterclockwise (press again to return)
⬆	Up	Scroll up
⬇	Down	Scroll down
⬅	Left	Scroll left
➡	Right	Scroll right
1 あ	Upper Left	View upper left portion of page
2 か	Full Screen	View document in full screen
3 さ	Upper Right	View upper right portion of page
4 た	Zoom Out	Zoom out
5 な	Centre	View page centre
6 は	Zoom In	Zoom in
7 ま	Lower Left	View lower left portion of page
8 や	Select Page	Jump to specified page ■ Enter page number ► Press ●
9 ら	Lower Right	View lower right portion of page
0 の	Help	View a summary of key assignments
#	Next Page	Open the next page
X	Previous Page	Open the previous page
⌂	Fit Page	Zoom to fit width

Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download/exchange QR Codes via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes. Handset automatically detects code type and reads data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- Zoom is not available.

Note ▶

- Scan may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan barcodes under adequate light.
- Capture one barcode at a time; otherwise scan may fail.

Tip ▶

- A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
- A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 4,296 alphanumerics and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (📷) ▶ Barcode ▶ Scan Barcode

1 Frame barcode in the centre of Display

- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Macro (📷).
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.
- Use 📷 to adjust brightness.
- To activate or cancel Continuous mode, press [Options] ▶ Select **Continuous Scan** ▶ Press 📷 ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press 📷
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press [0] [わかんナ] ▶ Press 📷 to return.



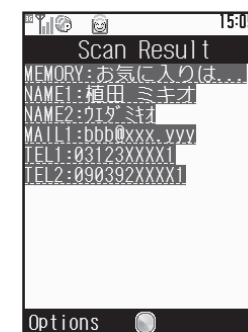
2 Press 📷

Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.
- Press [Y] [Cancel] to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

- Using Scan Results: see P.12-20 - 12-22
- To start over, press [CLEAR/BACK] ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 📷 ▶ Repeat from Step 1



Continuous Mode

- After scanning, **Scan completed. Scan new?** appears.
- To scan next code, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Frame the code on Display ➔ Press
 - To cancel, choose **No** ➔ Press ➔ Scan results appear

Split Data

- After scanning, **Split data. Scan next symbol?** appears.
- To scan next code, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Frame the code on Display ➔ Press
 - To cancel, choose **No** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
- The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

Using Scan Results

Place Calls¹	Select a number starting with TEL: ² ➔ Press ➔ The number appears ➔ Press
Send Mail³	Select a mail address including @ ➔ Press ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8 .)
Quote & Send Mail	Press Options ➔ Select Send Message ➔ Press ➔ Press ➔ Select S! Mail or SMS ⁴ ➔ Press ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-6 or on P.14-7 .) To use a part of text, press Cut in Send Message window ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press
Save to Phone Book^{1, 3}	Select a number starting with TEL: ² or mail address including @ ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Save to Ph.Book ➔ Press ➔ Select As New Entry ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Access Internet Sites⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// ➔ Press ➔ Handset connects to the Internet
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file ➔ Press Options ➔ Select To Data Folder ➔ Press
Saving	Press Options ➔ Select Save ➔ Press ➔ Save up to 10 items. To open saved items, see P.12-22 "Scanned Results".
Use for System Graphics	Select an image ➔ Press Options ➔ Select As System ➔ Press ➔ Select an item ➔ Press ➔ Press

Copy Text	Text	Press Options ➔ Select Copy ➔ Press ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press
	URL ⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Copy URL ➔ Press
	Mail Address ³	Select a mail address including @ ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Copy Address ➔ Press
	Phone Number ¹	Select a number starting with TEL: ² ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Copy Telephone ➔ Press
Wallpaper		Select an image ➔ Press Options ➔ Select As Wallpaper ➔ Press ➔ Press ■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select Centred , Full Screen or Fit Image ➔ Press ➔ Press (For Display size images or Centred , use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.)
Open Images or Play Melodies		Select an image or melody file ➔ Press
Open Properties		Select an image or melody file ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Details ➔ Press

¹ Available when text is in **TEL: *** format.

² Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognised as phone numbers.

³ Available when text is in ***@*** format.

⁴ S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if text exceeds the SMS character limit.

⁵ Available when text is in **http:// *** or **rtsp:// *** format.

* represents one or more alphanumerics.

MEMORY: or MAILTO:

■ When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Details or SMS/S! Mail messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

Scanning during Text Entry

Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Options** ➔ Select **Scan** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Scan Code** ➔ Press ➔ Frame barcode in the centre of Display ➔ Press ➔ Press

■ To use a part of text, press **Cut** ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press

Note ➤ Barcodes/text cannot be scanned when:
 ■ Entering text during a call ■ S! Application is active

Open Barcode

Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

Main Menu ➤ **Tools** ➤ **Tools 3** ➤ **Barcode** ➤ **Open Barcode**

Select a barcode image ➔ Press

■ For split data, choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 ■ To cancel, choose **No** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

■ When scanning fails, press ➔ Select next barcode image manually ➔ Press

- Note** ▶
- Resized QR Codes may be invalid.
 - When invalid, ***This data may be incorrect.*** appears.

Scanned Results

Open files saved in Scanned Results

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (👁) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Scanned Results*

Select a file ▶ Press (⏏)

- To open properties, select a file ▶ Press (Ⓜ) **Options** ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press (⏏)
 - Press (⏏) to return.
- To delete files, select one ▶ Press (Ⓜ) **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press (⏏)
- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
- Some files such as large images may not open.

Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Ring Songs·Tones, Text Templates or Other Documents.

- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see **P.8-5**.

Phone Book

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (👁) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Phone Book*

Select an entry ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ QR Code appears ▶ Press (⏏)

- Only name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note are encoded.

Text Input

Enter and encode text

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (👁) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Text Input*

Enter text ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ QR Code appears ▶ Press (⏏)

Data Folder

Encode melody/image files or Text Templates in Data Folder

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (👁) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Data Folder*

Select a folder ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ Select an item ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ QR Code appears ▶ Press (⏏)

Switching Storage Media

- While created QR Code appears, press (Ⓜ) **Options** ▶ Select **Save To** ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ Select **Phone or Memory Card** ▶ Press (⏏)

Attaching to S! Mail

- While created QR Code appears, press (Ⓜ) **Options** ▶ Select **Send As** ▶ Press (⏏) ▶ Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7

Incoming Calls while Creating QR Code

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Some symbols may not be read.
- Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).
- Zoom is not available.

- Note** ►
- Text Scanner will not activate if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press ● to proceed.
 - Text Scanner will not activate if an S! Application is active.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (☺) ► Barcode ► Scan Text

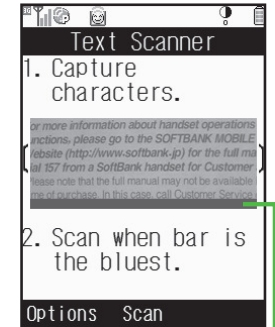
1 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector according to text size.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.

■ Use ☺ to adjust brightness.

■ To switch text mode, press [Options] ► Select **Reversed Text** ► Press ● ► Select **Auto**, **Normal** or **Reversed** ► Press ●

■ To open Help (Key Assignments), press [0わきん].
■ Press ● to return.



Focus Adjustment Bar (Better focus in darker blue)

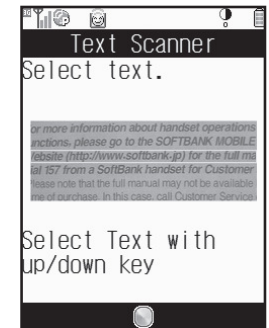
2 Press ●

Text Scanner reads the text.

■ Press [CLEAR/BACK] to stop scan ► Start over from Step 1

3 Use ☺ to select a line and press ●

- Text Scanner reads one line per scan.



4 Scan results appear

Handset automatically registers scan results as a URL, Email Address, Phone Number or Text; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.
- To change mode, press **Options** ➔ Select **Change Mode** ➔ Press ➔ Select a type ➔ Press (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
- To edit, press **Options** ➔ Select **Select/Edit** ➔ Press ➔ Select the character to edit ➔ Select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad
- To start over, press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Repeat from Step 1

5 Press

- To use scan results, see **P.12-20**.

Scanning More Text

- After Step 5, press **Options** ➔ Select **Continue Part** or **Scan More** ➔ Press
 - **Continue Part**
Select **Continue Part** to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)
 - **Scan More**
Select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.
- **Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

Scanning during Text Entry

Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Options** ➔ Select **Scan** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Text Scanner** ➔ Press ➔ Frame text in the centre of Display ➔ Press ➔ Select a line ➔ Press ➔ Press

- To change mode or edit scan results, see Step 4 on the left.

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments. Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

- Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Text Templates.
- Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low. Stopwatch ends when battery runs low.

Main Menu ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Tools 2** ➔ **Stopwatch**

1 Press

Stopwatch starts.

- To record Lap times, press **LAP**.
 - The last four Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled.

2 Press to stop countdown

- To save the records to Text Template, press **Options** ➔ Select **Save to Templates** ➔ Press
 - To check saved records, open Text Templates (see **P.12-26**).
- Press to resume.
- To clear the records, press **Options** ➔ Select **Reset** ➔ Press

3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

- Tip** ▶
- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled. Save records to Text Templates.
 - Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Alarm Tone sounds and Small Light flashes when set time elapses.

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 2** () ▶ **Countdown Timer**

1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press

- To edit entered time, use  to move cursor and enter correct time. If  is already pressed, follow the steps below.
- When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, the last set time returns.

 To change time, press  **Edit** ▶ Enter time ▶ Press 

2 Press

Countdown starts.

3 Press to stop countdown

-  Press  to resume.
-  To reset, stop countdown and press  **Reset**.

4 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Countdown Timer End

- Tone sounds according to **General Volume** setting.
 - Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press .
 - In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
 - When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, **Timer Expired** appears after  is pressed to end the call.

- Tip** ▶
- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Expenses Memo

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses. Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).

Add New Expense

Enter monetary figure and categorise it

Main Menu► *Tools* ► *Tools 3* (☺) ► *Expenses Memo* ► *Add New Expense***Enter amount** ► **Press** ● ► **Select a category** ► **Press** ●

■ **Shortcut:** In Standby, enter amount ► **Press** ● ► **Press** ●
 ► **Select a category** ► **Press** ●

- The entry date, category and figure are saved.
- If Clock is unset, entry date and time will be saved as --/-- --:--.

Totals

Check entries

Main Menu► *Tools* ► *Tools 3* (☺) ► *Expenses Memo***Select Totals** ► **Press** ●

- Use ● to scroll entries.
- To change category, select an entry ► **Press** ● ► **Select a category** ► **Press** ●
 - To enter custom category name, select **Other** in category list ► **Press** ● ► **Enter name** (up to 14 characters) ► **Press** ● (Preset category names are not affected.)
- To change entry amount, select an entry ► **Press** [Options] ► **Select Change Amount** ► **Press** ● ► **Edit** ► **Press** ●
- To delete an entry, select one ► **Press** [Options] ► **Select Delete Item** ► **Press** ● ► **Choose Yes** ► **Press** ●
- To delete all entries, press [Options] ► **Select Delete All** ► **Press** ● ► **Enter Handset Code** ► **Press** ● ► **Choose Yes** ► **Press** ●

Edit Category

Rename categories

Main Menu► *Tools* ► *Tools 3* (☺) ► *Expenses Memo***Select Edit Category** ► **Press** ● ► **Select a category** ► **Press** ● ► **Edit** ► **Press** ●

- Enter up to 14 characters.

Text Templates

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.
 Save up to 60 entries (1,536 characters each).

New Entry

Main Menu► *Tools* ► *Tools 3* (☺) ► *Text Templates* ► *<Add New Entry>*

1 Enter text and press ●

Tip ► To paste saved text into text entry windows, see **P.3-15** "Using Text Templates".

Opening Templates

Main Menu► *Tools* ► *Tools 3* (☺) ► *Text Templates*

1 Select a file and press ●

■ Press [CLEAR/BACK] to return.

Editing Templates

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3 (🕒)* ▶ *Text Templates*

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
 - 2** Select *Edit* and press 
 - 3** Edit text and press 
- File is overwritten.

Deleting Templates

Delete single Text Templates.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ **Tools 3** (🔍) ▶ Text Templates ▶ **Select a file** ▶ Options (📧) ▶ Delete

- 1 Choose Yes and press **

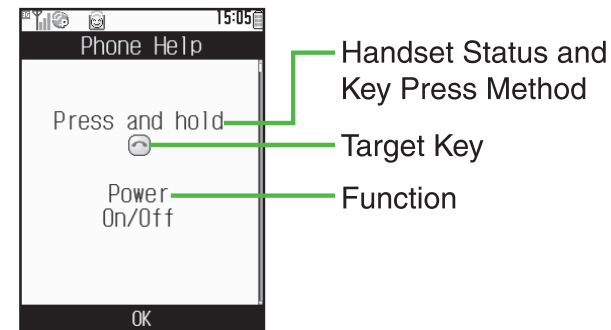
Phone Help

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts.

Most Phone Help functions are inaccessible from menu items.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Tools 3* (🕒)

- 1** Select **Phone Help** and press .
Phone Help window opens.



- 2 Press  to toggle guides**
- Alternatively, press  or .
- 3 Press  to return**

Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

- When **out** appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Call Forwarding	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to handset, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (see right)
Voicemail	Set handset to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Centre. Access caller messages from handset in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (see P.13-4). ■ Missed Call Notification Records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.
Call Waiting*	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see P.13-5).
Conference Call*	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (see P.13-6).
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (see P.13-7)
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (see P.13-10)

*An additional contract is required.

Call Forwarding

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when **All Outgoing Calls** or **All Incoming Calls** in Call Barring is active.

Call Forwarding

Initiate Call Forwarding

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ **Call/Video Call (☺)** ▶ Voicemail/Divert ▶ Diverts

Direct Entry

Select a call type ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Always** or **No Answer** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Enter Number** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Press ●

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press ●

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

Phone Book

Select a call type ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Always** or **No Answer** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a number ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press ●

Call Forwarding Records

Select a call type ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Always** or **No Answer** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press ●

Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

- To answer calls, press  while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - When **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Note ► Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **00** (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Forwarding Video Calls

Video Calls are forwarded only to Video Call-compatible devices that comply with 3G-324M.

Tip ► Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (see **P.2-9**).

Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All

Cancel Call Forwarding

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call/Video Call**  ► **Voicemail/Divert**

Select *Cancel All* ► Press  ► Choose *Yes* ►

Press 

- Cancel All also cancels Voicemail.

Status

Check Call Forwarding status

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call/Video Call**  ► **Voicemail/Divert**

Select *Status* ► Press 

- Call Forwarding status appears.
 - Press  to return.

Voicemail

- Calls are diverted to Voicemail Centre via Call Forwarding function; Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when **All Outgoing Calls** or **All Incoming Calls** in Call Barring is active.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
- Activate Missed Call Notification (see **P.13-5**) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

Voicemail

Initiate Voicemail

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call/Video Call** (📞) ▶ **Voicemail/Divert** ▶ **Voicemail** ▶ **Activate**

Select **Always or No Answer** ▶ Press ●

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press ●

Incoming Calls while Voicemail is Active

- To answer calls, press  while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - When **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Tip ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voicemail together with Answer Phone (see **P.2-9**).

Example: Ring time for Voicemail: 10 seconds

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All

Cancel Voicemail

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call/Video Call** (📞) ▶ **Voicemail/Divert**

Select **Cancel All** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●

- Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.

Call Voicemail

Check Voicemail messages

Main Menu

▶ **Phone**

Select **Call Voicemail** ▶ Press ●

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voicemail Centre.
- Alternatively, follow these steps in Standby.
 - Press ● ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press ● ▶ Use ● to select **Call/Video Call** ▶ Select **Voicemail/Divert** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Voicemail** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Call Voicemail** ▶ Press ●

Tip ▶  appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.

Status

Check Voicemail status

Main Menu▶ *Settings* ➔ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ➔ *Voicemail/Divert***Select Status ➔ Press** (●)

- Voicemail status appears.
- Press (●) to return.

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

Activate/Cancel

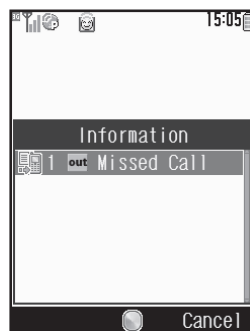
Activate or cancel Missed Call Notification

Main Menu▶ *Settings* ➔ *Call/Video Call* (☎)**Select** (☎) **Missed Calls ➔ Press** (●) ➔ **Press** (●)

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to the Network.

Retrieving Missed Call Notification Records

- Missed Call Notification records are stored at the Centre. When handset is turned on or comes into range, Information window (see **P.2-7**) appears with Missed Call records.
- Information window may take some time to open.



Call Waiting

An additional contract is required.**Call Waiting On/Off**

Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu▶ *Settings* ➔ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ➔ *Call Waiting***Choose On or Off ➔ Press** (●)**Incoming Calls**

Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press (☎).

- Press (☎) to switch between two lines.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

- All lines are disconnected.

Pressing (☎) while Someone is on Hold

- Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

- Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:

Press (☎) **Options** ➔ **Select Retrieve ➔ Press** (●)

- Tip ▶**
- Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece.
 - When Voicemail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Centre or the forwarding number. When active service is set to **Always** Call Waiting is disabled.

Status

Check Call Waiting status

Main Menu ▶ Settings ➔ *Call/Video Call* (📞) ➔ *Call Waiting***Select Status ➔ Press** (●)

- Call Waiting status appears.
- Press (●) to return.

Conference Call

An additional contract is required.**Dial New Number**

Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ➔ Press (📞)

- Line 2 is open. Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press (📞) to select a number from Phone Book or press (📞) for 1+ seconds to select from Call Log.

Swap Calls

Switch between two open lines

During a call, press (📞).

- The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

- All lines are disconnected.

Pressing (📞) **while Someone is on Hold**

- Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

- Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:

Press (📞) **Options** ➔ **Select Retrieve** ➔ **Press** (●)**Conference Call**

Use up to five lines simultaneously

Press (📞) **Options** **while switching between two lines**
 ➔ **Select Multi Party** ➔ **Press** (●) ➔ **Select**
Conference All ➔ **Press** (●)

- To switch to private conference during Conference Call, select a number/name ➔ **Press** (●) ➔ **Select Private** ➔ **Press** (●)
- The other lines are placed on hold.
- To switch back to Conference Call during private conference or after opening a new line, press (📞) **Options** ➔ **Select Multi Party** ➔ **Press** (●) ➔ **Select Conference All** ➔ **Press** (●)

Ending Calls during Conference Call

- All lines are disconnected.

Some Lines End during Conference Call

- Other lines remain connected.

Call Barring

Restrict incoming/outgoing calls or SMS messages.

Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing Calls	All Outgoing Calls	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	Bar Int'l Call ¹	Allow only domestic calls
	Only Local & Home ²	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Incoming Calls	All Incoming Calls	Reject all calls
	Bar if Abroad	Reject calls when outside Japan

¹Example: While in the UK, place domestic calls only.

²Example: While in the UK, place calls domestically or to Japan.

Alternatively, restrict calls by number/Caller ID availability.

Rejected Numbers	Black List	Reject calls from designated numbers
	Unknown	Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book
	Withheld	Reject calls without Caller ID
	Payphone	Reject calls from public phones
	Unavailable	Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

- Note** ►
- Network Password selected at initial subscription (see **P.1-27**) is required to change Call Barring settings.
 - If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
 - **All Outgoing Calls** and **All Incoming Calls** are disabled when Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active.

Tip ► If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, **Call barred.** appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Outgoing Calls*

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose *On* (set) or *Off* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press ●

Cancelling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press ●

Tip ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Status

Check Call Barring status for outgoing calls

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Outgoing Calls*

Select restriction ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Status* ▶ Press ●

- Call Barring status appears.
■ Press ● to return.

Restricting Incoming Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Incoming Calls*

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose *On* (set) or *Off* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press ●

Cancelling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press ●

Status

Check Call Barring status for incoming calls

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Incoming Calls*

Select *All Incoming Calls* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Status* ▶ Press ●

- Call Barring status appears.
■ Press ● to return.

Rejecting a Call

Set Reject Number

Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Black List ► Set Reject Number

Adding Numbers

Select **<empty>** ► Press (●) ► Enter a number ► Press (●)

- To select from Phone Book, select **<empty>** ► Press (☐) **Options** ► Select **Ph.Book List** ► Press (●) ► Select an entry ► Press (●)
 - For entries with multiple numbers, select one ► Press (●)
 - Name appears for numbers saved in Phone Book.
- To select from Call Log, select **<empty>** ► Press (☐) **Options** ► Select **From Call Log** ► Press (●) ► Use (📞) to select a type ► Select a record ► Press (●)

Editing Numbers

Select an entry ► Press (●) ► Edit the number ► Press (●)

Deleting Numbers

Select an entry ► Press (☐) **Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press (●) ► Choose **Yes** ► Press (●)

Tip ► Designate numbers to reject then set Switch On/Off to **On**.

Switch On/Off

Reject calls from designated numbers

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Black List ► Switch On/Off

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Unknown

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Unknown

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Withheld

Reject calls without Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Withheld

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Payphone

Reject calls from public phones

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Payphone

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Unavailable

Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

► Settings ► **Call/Video Call** (📞) ► Call Barring ► Rejected Numbers ► Unavailable

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ► Press (●)

Changing Network Password

Change NW
Password

Change Network Password

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call (📞)* ► Call Barring ►
Change NW Password

Enter current Network Password ► Press ● ►
Enter new Network Password ► Press ● ► Enter
new Network Password again ► Press ●

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls.
Regardless of this setting, sending or blocking Caller ID can
be selected for each call. Enter the following numbers/
symbols before a phone number when placing a call.

Send	1 あ 8 TUV 6 は MNO or 3 3 DEF 1 あ #
Block	1 あ 8 TUV 4 た GHI or # 3 3 DEF 1 あ #

Show My
Number

Send or block Caller ID

Default On

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call (📞)* ► Show My
Number

Choose *On* (send) or *Off* ► Press ●

Status

Check Caller ID status

Main Menu

► Settings ► *Call/Video Call (📞)* ► Show My
Number

Select *Status* ► Press ●

- Caller ID status appears.
Press ● to return.

Messaging

Basics

Use SMS and S! Mail for messaging.

Create Arrange Mail or Feeling Mail from S! Mail.

SMS

Exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

- Send SMS to up to 20 recipients at one time.

S! Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets, other mobiles and PCs, etc. Attach image/sound files.

- Send S! Mail to up to 20 recipients at one time.

Arrange Mail

Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more (see **P.14-11**).

Feeling Mail

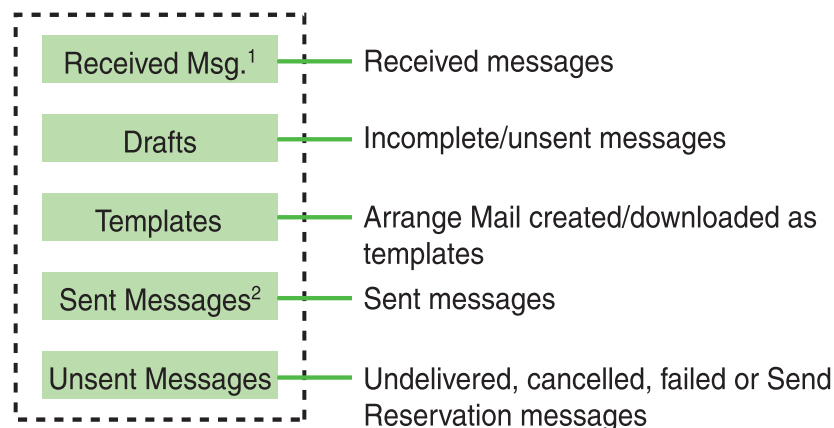
Ringtone, Vibration and Small Light response varies by the emotion set by sender (see **P.14-15**).

Tip ►

- An additional contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- Address questions about messaging to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Messaging Folders

Messages are organised in folders by type.



¹ **Received Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 7** (My Folders) appear within when Received Msg. View (see **P.14-4**) is set to **Folder View**. Spam Folder appears as well if Anti Spam Measures (see **P.14-35**) is active.

² **Sent Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 7** (My Folders) appear within when Sent Msg. View (see **P.14-4**) is set to **Folder View**.

Memory Status

- Press **⏏** ➔ **Select Messaging** ➔ Press **⏏** ➔ **Select Memory Status** ➔ Press **⏏** ➔ **Select Received Msg., Sent Total, Sent Msg., Drafts or Unsent Msg.** ➔ Press **⏏**
 - Press **⏏** to return.
- Save up to 5 MB or 1,000 messages in Received Msg. folder. Handset stores up to 3 MB or 500 messages between Sent Messages, Drafts and Unsent Messages.
- A notice appears when Messaging Folder memory is low.
- Templates memory usage is reflected in memory status of Other Documents in Data Folder (see **P.8-2**).
- USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Select a Messaging folder and press **⏏** to open it.



Sender+Preview

Message Type/Status

• Message Status:

	Unread		Read
	Sent		Failed
	Replied		Forwarded
	S! Mail Notice		Unread Delivery Report
	Send Reservation set*		

SMS appears below SMS messages ().

* Send Reservation messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.

• Message Settings:

	Attachments		Protected
	Priority (High)		Priority (Low)
	SMS Mail on USIM Card		

Sender or Recipient

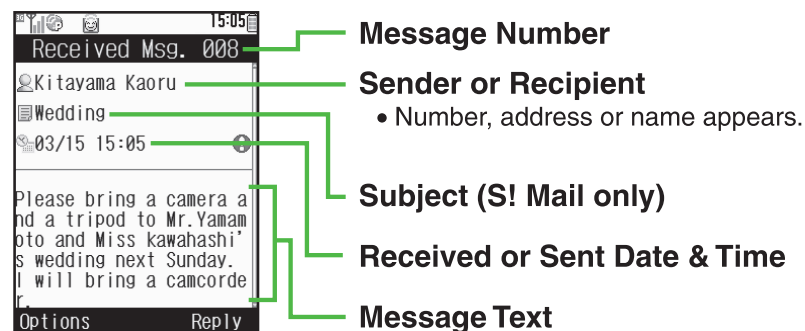
- Number, address or name appears.

Message Text

- Tip ▶**
- Follow these steps to sort messages.
Press [Envelope] **Options** ➔ **Select View Settings** ➔
Press [Enter] ➔ **Select Sort** ➔ Press [Enter] ➔ **Select an option** ➔ Press [Enter]
 - To change message list view, see right.

Message Contents

Select a message and press [Enter] to open it.



- Tip ▶**
- To activate Display Backlight, press [0] [わかん+] - [9] [らWXYZ].
 - Press [#] [戻る] to open previous message (older one), or press [X] [先送り] to open next one (newer one).

Changing Views

Message List View

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **General Settings**

- 1 Select Message List View and press [Enter]**

- 2 Select Two-line, Sender+Preview, Subjects+Preview, Sender or Subjects and press [Enter]**

- Message List View is **Sender+Preview** by default.

- Tip ▶**
- Alternatively, open a Messaging folder and follow these steps.
Press [Envelope] **Options** ➔ **Select View Settings** ➔
Press [Enter] ➔ **Perform from Step 1 on the left**
 - Shortcut: Open a Messaging folder and press [Envelope] to toggle view.

Folder View

Set folders to appear in Received Msg. and Sent Messages folders. Organise messages into folders manually or automatically (see **P.14-31**).

Received Msg. View and Sent Msg. View are **List View** (folders are hidden) by default.

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **General Settings**

- 1 Select Received Msg. View or Sent Msg. View and press [Enter]**

- When the folder contains a Secret folder, enter Handset Code ➔ Press [Enter]

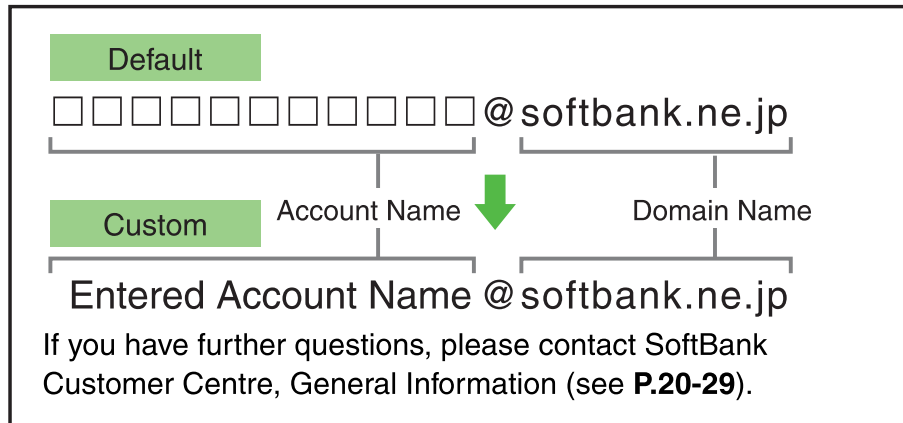
- 2 Select Folder View and press [Enter]**

- To hide folders, select **List View** ➔ Press [Enter]

Note ▶ When folders are hidden, messages in Secret folders appear in message list.

Customising Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.



- Handset must connect to the Internet to customise handset address.
- Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-20) before customising handset address.
- Customising handset mail address helps reduce spam.
- Default Account Name is random alphanumerics.

Main Menu ► *Messaging* ► *Settings*

1 Select **Address Setting** and press ●

Handset connects to the Internet.

2 Select **English** and press ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip ► Alternatively, customise handset address via Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu. (Click **設定・申込**, then **English**, then **Messaging Settings**.)

Sending Text Messages

- Create Contact Groups beforehand to send the same message to multiple recipients at one time (see P.4-12).
- Save frequently used numbers/addresses to Speed Mail List (see P.14-33).
- Use Multi Job (see P.1-26) to view other messages while creating a message.

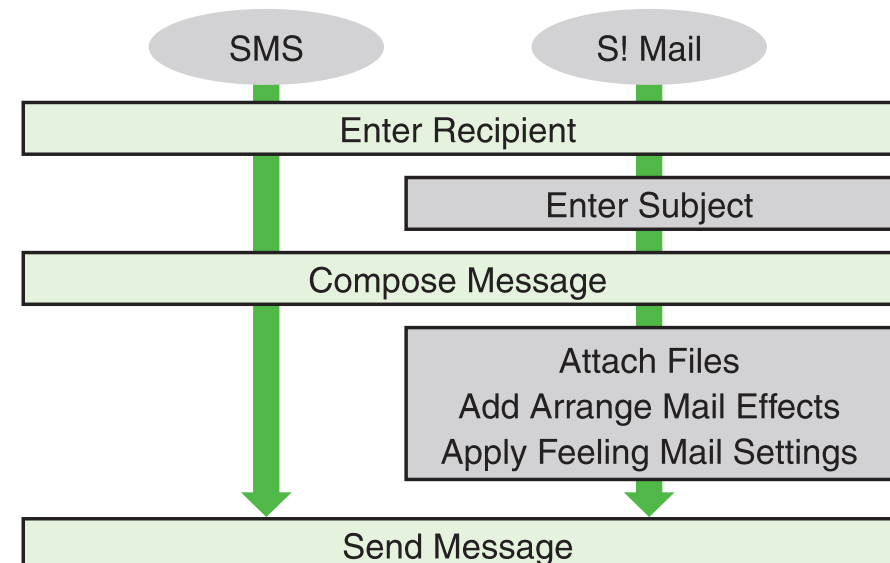
Basics

Available entry limits vary by Message Type.

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachments
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

Mail Composition Overview



Character Entry Limits

Character entry limit varies by Message Type.

SMS	160 single-byte alphanumerics
S! Mail	Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics

- For SMS, only single-byte alphanumeric entry is available when Char-code (see **P.14-37**) is **GSM 7bit**.
- Send up to 300 KB including message text via S! Mail. Message text character limit differs by attachment size or number of recipients.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window (see right, **P.14-7**).

Creating & Sending SMS Mail

1 Press , select **Messaging** and press 

- Alternatively, press  in Standby.

2 Select **Create New SMS** and press 

Mail Composition window opens.

3 Select recipient field and press 

- Entering Recipients: see **P.14-9**

4 Enter recipients

- To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on **P.14-7**.

- **Enter Address** is not available for SMS.

5 Select message text field and press  then enter a message

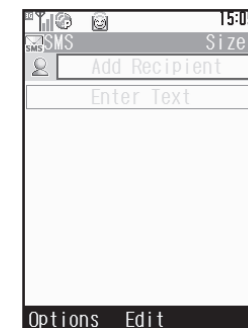
Alternatively, enter the first character; message text entry window opens automatically.

- Entering Characters: see **P.3-5**

6 Press 

- To edit the message, see Step 8 on **P.14-8**.
- To delete the message, see Step 8 on **P.14-8**.
- To preview 3D Pictogram, see Step 8 on **P.14-8**.
- Delivery Options: see **P.14-15**
- Send Reservation: see **P.14-17**
- Saving to Drafts: see **P.14-18**

7 Press  **Send**



SMS Mail Composition Window

Converting SMS Mail to S! Mail

- In SMS Mail Composition window, press **Options** →
Select **Change to S! Mail** → Press → Choose **Yes** →
Press
 - When entered message text exceeds SMS character limit, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to convert SMS to S! Mail and continue entering text.

Creating & Sending S! Mail

1 Press , select **Messaging** and press

- Alternatively, press in Standby.

2 Select **Create Message** and press

Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press for 1+ seconds



S! Mail Composition Window

3 Select recipient field and press

Select Recipient window opens.

■ Entering Recipients: see P.14-9

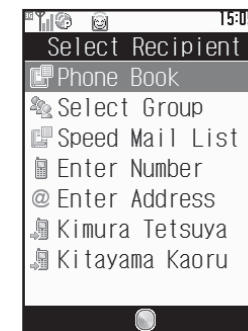
4 **Phone Book**

1 Select **Phone Book** and press

2 Select a recipient and press

- To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Dialling from Phone Book" on P.4-8.

- When multiple items are saved, select one → Press



Select Recipient Window

Contact Groups (see P.4-12)

1 Select **Select Group** and press

2 Select a Group and press

- To add recipients, select recipient field → Press → Select **Add Recipient** → Press → Repeat Step 4

Sent Mail Records

1 Select a recipient and press

- Sent mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with corresponding indicators.

Speed Mail List (see P.14-33)

1 Select **Speed Mail List** and press

2 Select a recipient and press

Direct Entry

1 Select **Enter Number** or **Enter Address** and press 

2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press 

5 Select subject field and press 

Subject entry window opens. Alternatively, enter the first character to open subject entry window.

6 Enter subject and press 

- Enter up to 512 single-byte alphanumerics.

7 Select  **Text** and press  then enter a message

■ Entering Characters: see **P.3-5**

- After entering My Pictogram from My Pict History, Arrange Mail Composition window (see **P.14-11**) opens automatically.

■ To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Pict Setting** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **For DoCoMo**, **For au**, **For SoftBank** or **Common** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a Pictogram ➔ Press 

- Available Pictograms vary by Pict Setting mode.
- Mode selection applies to the current message only.
- Changing Pict Setting does not affect entered Pictograms.

■ Creating Arrange Mail: see **P.14-11**

■ To enter Signature, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Advanced** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Signature** ➔ Press 

- Activate Auto Insert (see **P.14-35**) to enter Signature automatically.

8 Press 

■ To edit the message, select message text field ➔ Press  ➔ Edit ➔ Press 

■ To delete the message, select message text field ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Remove Text** ➔ Press 

■ To preview 3D Pictogram, select message text field ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **3D Pictogram** ➔ Press 

- Preview how the message appears on 3D Pictogram-compatible recipient handsets.

■ Delivery Options: see **P.14-15**

■ Creating Feeling Mail: see **P.14-15**

■ Send Reservation: see **P.14-17**

■ Saving to Drafts: see **P.14-18**

9 Attach files

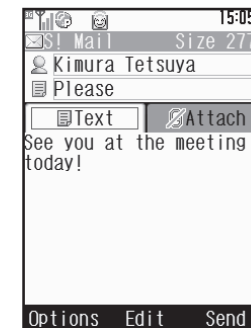
■ Attaching Files: see **P.14-10**

10 Press  **Send**

- Message is sent even if handset is closed.

■ To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

- Message is not sent if cancelled quick enough.



Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Sending from Phone Book Entries

- Open a Phone Book entry and follow these steps.
 - Phone Numbers
Select a number ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Create Message* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *S! Mail or SMS* ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8 or on P.14-6
 - Mail Addresses
Select a mail address ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-8

When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

- Messages are stored in Server Mail Box, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.
 - Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

Delivery Failure

- Information window opens ( appears) for delivery failure.
To send unsent messages, select *Sending failure* ➔ Press  ➔ Select a message ➔ Press 
- Activate Auto Resend (see P.14-34) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
 - If messages are not sent after two Automatic Resend attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
 - Automatic Resend may send the same message twice.

Entering Recipients

- To add recipients, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-6, P.14-7) and follow these steps.
Select recipient field ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Add Recipient* ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 4 on P.14-7
 - Press  to return.
 - Enter up to 20 recipients in total.
- To switch recipient status between To, Cc (carbon copy) and Bcc (blind carbon copy), open S! Mail Composition window and follow these steps.
Select recipient field ➔ Press  ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press  **Options ➔ Select *Change to To, Change to Cc or Change to Bcc* ➔ Press **
 - Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
- To change/edit, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-6, P.14-7) and follow these steps.
Select recipient field ➔ Press  ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press  ➔ Edit ➔ Press 
 - Press  to return.
- To delete, open Mail Composition window (see P.14-6, P.14-7) and follow these steps.
Select recipient field ➔ Press  ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press  **Options ➔ Select *Delete* ➔ Press **
 - To delete all, select *Delete All* instead of *Delete* ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
 - Press  to return.

Note ➤ When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana or Pictograms in message text and subject. They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

Attaching Files

Attach images, sound files, vFiles (Phone Book/schedule entries), etc. to S! Mail messages.

- Attach up to 20 files or 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on **P.14-8**; after S! Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Select **Attach**

2 Select **Attach File** and press

 Alternatively, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Attach File** ➔ Press 

3 **Image Files**

1 Select **Picture** and press

2 Select a folder and press

 To capture an image, select **Take Picture** ➔ Press 
➔ Press  to shoot ➔ Press 

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

3 Select a file and press

 For large JPEG images, select attachment size ➔ Press 

 To change image size, select attached image ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Resize Picture** ➔ Press 
➔ Select a size ➔ Press 

- Resize Picture is not available when Multi Job is active or when a non-JPEG (.jpg) image is selected.

Sound Files

1 Select **Sound** and press

2 Select a folder and press

 To record sound, select **Record Voice** ➔ Press  ➔ Press  to start recording ➔ Press  to stop ➔ Select **Accept** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** ➔ Press  (Omit the next step.)

3 Select a file and press

Video Files

1 Select **Video** and press

2 Select **Saved Videos** and press

 To record video, select **Record Video** ➔ Press  ➔ Press  to start recording ➔ Press  to stop ➔ Select **Accept** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** ➔ Press  (Omit the next step.)

3 Select a file and press

Flash[®]/Flash[®] Ringtone Files (see P.8-7)

1 Select **Flash[®]** or **Flash[®] Ringtone** and press

2 Select a file and press

Phone Book Entries

1 Select **Attach Contact** and press

2 Select an entry and press

Schedule Entries

1 Select **Attach Appointment** and press

2 Select a date with schedule and press

3 Select an entry and press

Templates

- 1 Select **Templates** and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press ●

Books

- 1 Select **Books** and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press ●

Custom Screens

- 1 Select **Custom Screens** and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press ●

Other Files

- 1 Select **Other Documents** and press ●
- 2 Select a file and press ●

Deleting Attachments

- In S! Mail Composition window, select a file ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Remove Item** ➔ Press ●

Adding Attachments

- In S! Mail Composition window, select [Attach] ➔ Select **Attach File** ➔ Press ● ➔ Perform from Step 3 on P.14-10

Creating Arrange Mail

Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more.

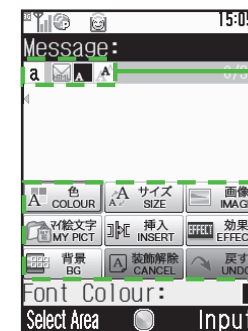
- Insert one sound or Flash® file per Arrange Mail.
- Enter up to 40 types of My Pictograms per Arrange Mail.
- Follow these steps in Step 7 on **P.14-8**; after S! Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Press [Options]

2 Select **Arrange** and press ●

Arrange Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: Press [Image] for 1+ seconds



Applied Effects

Arrange Menu

- Use ● to select an item.

Arrange Mail
Composition Window

3 Changing Font Colour

- 1 Select **Font Colour:** and press ●
- 2 Select a colour and press ●
- 3 Enter text
 - To open Arrange menu, press [X7].
 - To change colour of entered text, press [Select Area] → Select the start point → Press ● → Select the end point → Press ● → Select **Font Colour:** → Press ● → Select a colour → Press ●
 - To change colour of all entered text, press [Select Area] → Press [All] → Select **Font Colour:** → Press ● → Select a colour → Press ●

Changing Font Size

- 1 Select **Font Size:** and press ●
- 2 Select a size and press ●
- 3 Enter text
 - To open Arrange menu, press [X7].
 - To change font size of entered text, press [Select Area] → Select the start point → Press ● → Select the end point → Press ● → Select **Font Size:** → Press ● → Select a size → Press ●
 - To change font size of all entered text, press [Select Area] → Press [All] → Select **Font Size:** → Press ● → Select a size → Press ●

Inserting Images

- 1 Select **Insert Picture** and press ●
- 2 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press ●
- 3 Select a file and press ●
 - To capture an image, select **Insert Picture** → Press ● → Select **Take Picture** → Press ● → Press ● to shoot → Press ●
- 4 Use [Crosshair] to select target location and press ●
 - Omit this step if there is no text.

Inserting My Pictograms (see P.8-7)

- 1 Select **Insert My Pictogram** and press ●
Data Folder (My Pictograms) opens.
- 2 Select a file and press ●
- 3 Press ●
 - Alternatively, while entering message text, press [X] until **History** appears → Press [#] to open My Pict History → Select a file → Press ●
 - After entering My Pictogram, Arrange Mail Composition window opens automatically.
 - To select My Pictograms from file list, press [#] in My Pict History.

Inserting Background Sound

- 1 Select **Insert** and press ●
- 2 Select **Insert BGM Sound** and press ●
- 3 Select **Ring Songs·Tones** or **Music** and press ●
- 4 Select a file and press ●
 - To record sound, select **Insert** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Insert BGM Sound** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Record Voice** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ● to start recording ➔ Press ● to stop ➔ Select **Accept** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** ➔ Press ● (Omit the next step.)
 - To delete inserted sound, select **Insert** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Delete BGM Sound** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

Inserting Flash® (see P.8-7) File

- 1 Select **Insert** and press ●
- 2 Select **Insert Flash** and press ●

Data Folder (Flash®) opens.
- 3 Select a file and press ●
 - To preview inserted Flash®, press  **Input** ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Preview** ➔ Press ●
 - To delete inserted file, press  **Input** ➔ Move cursor before the Flash® file icon ➔ Press 

Inserting Horizontal Lines

- 1 Select **Insert** and press ●
- 2 Select **Insert Line** and press ●
 - Press  to return.

Flashing Text

- 1 Select **Effect** and press ●
- 2 Select **Blink** and press ●
- 3 Select **Blink On** and press ●
- 4 Enter text
 - To flash entered text, press  **Select Area** ➔ Select the start point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Blink** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Blink On** ➔ Press ●
 - To cancel, press  **Select Area** ➔ Select the start point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Blink** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Blink Off** ➔ Press ●

Scrolling Text

- 1 Select **Effect** and press ●
- 2 Select **Scrolling** and press ●
- 3 Select **Right to Left** or **Swing** and press ●
- 4 Enter text
 - To scroll entered text, press  **Select Area** ➔ Select the start point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Right to Left** or **Swing** ➔ Press ●
 - To cancel, press  **Select Area** ➔ Select the start point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Scroll Off** ➔ Press ●

Aligning Text

- 1 Select **Effect** and press
- 2 Select **Alignment** and press
- 3 Select **Alignment Left**, **Alignment Centre** or **Alignment Right** and press
- 4 Enter text

■ To align entered text, press **SelectArea** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Alignment** → Press → Select **Alignment Left**, **Alignment Centre** or **Alignment Right** → Press

Changing Background Colour

- 1 Select **Background Colour:** and press
- 2 Select a colour and press

Cancelling All

- 1 Select **Normal** and press
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press

- All Arrange Mail settings are cancelled and message text entry window returns.

Cancelling Last Action

- In Arrange Mail Composition window, select **Undo** → Press
- Does not apply to Background sound insertion/deletion.

Creating Templates

- In S! Mail Composition window, press **Options** → Select **Save as Template** → Press → Enter name → Press → Select **Save here..** → Press
- Entered recipients, subject and attachments are deleted.
- Templates can also be downloaded via the Internet, etc.

Creating Arrange Mail from Templates

- In Standby
 - Press → Select **Messaging** → Press → Select **Templates** → Press → Select one → Press
 - To check Templates, select one in Templates list and press **Options** → Select **Preview** → Press
 - To switch Template name display, select one in Templates list and press **Options** → Select **Item Displayed** → Press → Select **File Name** or **Title** → Press
 - To organise Templates, see P.8-8 "Managing Files & Folders".
- In S! Mail Composition Window
 - Press **Options** → Select **Launch Template** → Press → Select one → Press

Creating Feeling Mail

Apply Feeling Mail setting to S! Mail; corresponding Pictogram appears to the left of subject, and recipient handset responds according to Link to Feeling settings (see **P.14-20**).

- Send Feeling Mail to compatible SoftBank handsets only.
- Feeling Mail Pictograms appear as standard Pictograms in subjects on incompatible recipient handsets.
- Follow these steps in Step 8 on **P.14-8**; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select *Feeling Settings* and press 

3 Select *Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad or Imp./Notice* and press 

4 Select a Pictogram and press 
S! Mail Composition window returns.

Delivery Options

- Options are effective only when sent to compatible handsets.
- Settings are valid for one message.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on **P.14-6** (for SMS) or Step 8 on **P.14-8** (for S! Mail); press  to return to Mail Composition window then complete and send message.

SMS/S! Mail Delivery Option

Delivery Report Set to receive Delivery Report (see **P.14-19**)

 Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Messaging Settings* ➔
Press  ➔ Select *Delivery Report* ➔ Press  ➔
Choose *On* or *Off* ➔ Press 

SMS Delivery Option

Expiry Time Set Message Centre sent message storage limit

Default Maximum
Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Messaging Settings* ➔
Press  ➔ Select *Expiry Time* ➔ Press  ➔ Select
a limit ➔ Press 

S! Mail Delivery Options

Reply To Settings

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

■ Available when reply-to address is saved.
Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Reply To Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

■ To set reply-to address, see P.14-37 "Reply To Settings".

Note ➤ This function may not work depending on the recipient's mail software.

Priority

Set message priority

Default Normal

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Priority** ➔ Press ➔ **Select**
priority ➔ Press

- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

Remote Fwd. Action

Select whether to delete Server Mail after forwarding it

■ Available when forwarding Server Mail (Remote Forward).
Default Not Delete

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Remote Fwd. Action** ➔ Press ➔
➔ **Select Not Delete or Del. After Forward** ➔ Press

Set Auto Delete

Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Set Auto Delete** ➔ Press ➔
Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

Reply Request

Set to show a reply request

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Reply Request** ➔ Press ➔
Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

Forward NG

Set to show a do not forward request

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Forward NG** ➔ Press ➔
Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

Delete NG

Set to show a do not delete request

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Delete NG** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose**
On or Off ➔ Press

Quiz

Set up a question; recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
Default Off

Setting Up Quiz

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Messaging Settings** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Quiz** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Switch**
On/Off ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On** ➔ Press ➔
Select Question ➔ Press ➔ **Enter a question** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Answer** ➔ Press ➔ **Enter the**
answer ➔ Press ➔ Press **Done**

- Entered question and answer are deleted when Quiz is set to **Off**.
 - Default question (**When is my birthday?**) returns.

Editing Question/Answer

Press **Options** ➔ Select *Messaging Settings* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Quiz* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Edit Question* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Question* ➔ Press ➔ Enter a question ➔ Press ➔ Select *Answer* ➔ Press ➔ Enter the answer ➔ Press ➔ Press **Done**

Set Auto Play File

Show a comment and open/play an attached file automatically before message text is opened on recipient handsets

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

■ Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.14-8.

Default Off

Activating/Cancelling

Select a file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select *Set Auto Play File* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Switch On/Off* ➔ Press ➔ Choose *On* or *Off* ➔ Press

- Comment is deleted when Set Auto Play File is cancelled.

Entering a Comment

Select a file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select *Set Auto Play File* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Enter Message* ➔ Press ➔ Enter text ➔ Press

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Arrange Mail.
- *Set Auto Play File* appears only for compatible files.

Note ➤ *Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz* and *Set Auto Play File* cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message.

Send Reservation

Send messages at the designated date/time in the future.

- Messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.
- Save up to ten Send Reservation messages.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on P.14-6 (for SMS) or Step 8 on P.14-8 (for S! Mail).

1 Press **Options**

2 Select *Send Reservation* and press

3 Select *Date & Time* and press

■ To send messages ten seconds after signal returns, select *Within the Network* ➔ Press ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press

4 Enter date/time

- Select date/time within a week.

5 Choose *Yes* and press

- When Auto Resend (see P.14-34) is *Off*, failed Send Reservation messages (due to out-of-range or power-off) will not be resent.

Using Drafts

Saving to Drafts

- When memory is full, delete messages (see **P.14-29**) before creating new ones.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on **P.14-6** (for SMS) or Step 8 on **P.14-8** (for S! Mail).

1 Press [Envelope] **Options**

2 Select **Save to Drafts** and press [Enter]
Message is saved to Drafts folder.

Note ▶ Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change when saving S! Mail messages.

Sending from Drafts

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select **Drafts** and press [Enter]
Saved messages appear.

■ To open properties, select a message ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶
Select **Message Details** ▶ Press [Enter]
■ Press [Enter] to return.

■ To delete draft messages, select one ▶ Press [Envelope] **Options** ▶
Select **Delete** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press [Enter]

2 Select a message and press [Enter]
Mail Composition window (see **P.14-6**, **P.14-7**) opens with some fields filled in.

3 Edit/send the message

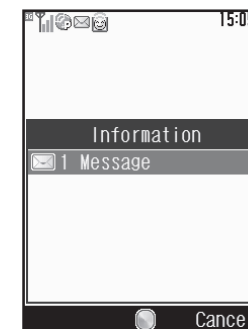
- For details, see procedures for creating SMS (see **P.14-6**) or S! Mail (see **P.14-7 - 14-8**).
 - Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.
- To save edited message to Drafts again, press [Envelope] **Options** ▶
Select **Save to Drafts** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select **Save as New** or **Save** (overwrite) ▶ Press [Enter]

Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens ([Envelope] appears) for new mail

- If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.



2 Select **Message** and press [Enter]
Received Msg. folder opens.

- Alternatively, press [Enter] while Delivery Notice appears.

■ When folders appear (see **P.14-4** "Folder View"), select one ▶ Press [Enter]



3 Select a message and press

Message window opens.

- To set 3D animation (see **P.14-24** "3D Pictogram") to play for compatible messages, see **P.14-24** "Display Effect".
-  To retrieve complete S! Mail messages, see **P.14-21**.
-  Using Messages: see **P.14-23**

- Tip** ►
- When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears, open from Received Msg. folder (see **P.14-23** "Checking Messages").
 - Handset does not respond to messages with Low Priority.

Viewing New Message Text on External Display

- When a new message is received with handset closed, activate External Display Backlight and press 
 - To scroll message text, press  or .
 - To exit, press . (Next new message opens, if any.)
- Pictograms and My Pictograms do not appear.
- Up to 150 characters appear per message. (Line break counts as two characters.)
- New messages appear on External Display only when Message is set to **Display** and Caller Display is **On** in External Display settings (see **P.9-13**).

Retrieving Server Mail Box Messages Manually

- Press  ► **Select Retrieve New Msg.** ► Press 

Messages with Reply Request

- When closing a message containing Reply Request, a confirmation appears.
 - To reply, choose **Yes** and press .
 - Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

Messages with Quiz

- A question appears when opening a message locked with Quiz. To open, press , enter the answer and press .
- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered.
- Subject and message text do not appear in message list.

Auto Play

- If **Set Auto Play File** is set to an attached file, a comment appears and the file opens/plays automatically upon opening the message.
 - Some files may not open/play.

Delivery Report

- When messages are sent with Delivery Report (see **P.14-35**) **On**, handset receives a Delivery Report from Server Mail Box. To open Delivery Report, follow these steps in Information window (see **P.14-18**).

Select Delivery Report ► Press  ► **Select a message with unconfirmed Delivery Report** ► Press  ► Press  **Report**

- When Report list appears, press  to open first report
 - Press  ► **Select next report** ► Press 
- Alternatively, open sent message;  appears for delivered messages,  for unknown and  for failed messages.

New Mail Out of Standby

- A double beep sounds and a notice such as **New Message from XX** (name/number). appears.
 - To change/hide notice or mute double beep, see **P.14-36** "Message Notice".
- Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

When Handset Address is Changed

- New handset address confirmation from SoftBank arrives. To update My Details automatically, follow these steps.
Select the message ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press ●
 - My Details cannot be updated when three mail addresses are already saved.

Receiving Feeling Mail

Ringtone, Vibration and Small Light respond according to emotion set by sender and Information window opens.

- Ringtone, Small Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder



Customising Handset Response

Default Settings:

	Happy/ Glad	OK/ Good	Sad/ Sorry	NG/ Bad	Important/ Notice
Idle Screen Info.	On				
Light On/Off	On				
Vibration Pattern	Link to Sound				
Ringtone On/Off	On				
Ringtone	Sound Effect 6	Sound Effect 7	Sound Effect 8	Sound Effect 9	Sound Effect 10
Duration	5 seconds				

Idle Screen Info. Show or hide subject, sender and graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail

Main Menu ➔ *Messaging ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Idle Screen Info.*

Choose On (show) or Off ➔ Press ●

Light Set Small Light illumination for incoming Feeling Mail

Main Menu ➔ *Messaging ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Light*

Activating/Deactivating

Choose On or Off ➔ Press ●

Vibration Pattern Set handset vibration for incoming Feeling Mail

Main Menu ➔ *Messaging ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Vibration Pattern*

Select On, Link to Sound or Off ➔ Press ●

Ringtone

Select sound/video for incoming Feeling Mail; set duration

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ►
Link to Feeling ► *Ringtone*

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ► Press  ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press 

Assign Tone/Video

Select **Assign Tone** ► Press  ► Select **Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad** or **Important/Notice** ► Press  ► Select **Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos** or **Flash® Ringtones** ► Press  ► Select a tone or file ► Press 

Duration

Select **Duration** ► Press  ► Enter time ► Press 

Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages

If Message DL (Japan)/Message DL (Abroad) is set to **DL only Tel. No.** or **Always Defer** (see P.14-37), Server Mail Box sends initial portion of S! Mail message in each of the following cases:

- The message was sent to multiple recipients
- Files are attached to the message

By default, Message DL (Japan) is set to **Always Download** and Message DL (Abroad) is set to **Always Defer**. To change settings, see P.14-37.

Tip ►

-  (S! Mail Notice) appears for S! Mail messages in Received Msg. folder when the remaining portion is in Server Mail Box.
- To retrieve complete S! Mail via Mail List, see P.14-22.

Main Menu

► *Messaging*

1 Select **Received Msg.** and press

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 Select a message with and press

3 Press **More**

Download starts.

- After download, complete message appears.

■ To cancel download, press  **Cancel**.

Note ►

Messages larger than 300 KB may be partially deleted depending on Server status.

Retrieving Mail List

Retrieve a list of messages stored in Server Mail Box (Server Mail).

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Server Mail Box** and press ●

- To open retrieved Mail List, select **Mail List** ► Press ●
- To retrieve all Server Mail, select **Retrieve All Mails** ► Press ● (Omit the next steps.)
- To delete all Server Mail, select **Delete All Mails** ► Press ● ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Select **Except New Msg.** or **Delete All** ► Press ● (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select **Mail List** and press ●

3 Press [Options]

4 Select **Retrieve Mail List** and press ●

After retrieval, Mail List appears.

- When Mail List has already been retrieved, it is refreshed.
- To cancel retrieval, press [Cancel].
- Using Mail List: see right

Server Status

- To check Server status, follow these steps after Step 1 above.
Select Mailbox Volume ► Press ●
 - Press [CLEAR/BACK] to return.
 - To update Server Mail Volume, press ●.

Using Mail List

Get

Retrieve complete S! Mail messages

Select a message ► Press ●

- To retrieve all Server Mail, press [Options] ► Select **Retrieve All** ► Press ●
- Retrieved messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received Msg. folder.
- To select multiple messages to retrieve, see P.14-24.

Remote Forward

Forward Server Mail directly to other SoftBank handsets, PCs, etc.

Select a message ► Press [Options] ► Select **Remote Forward** ► Press ● ► Select recipient field ► Press ● ► Enter recipients (perform Step 4 on P.14-7) ► Press [Send]

Delete

Delete Server Mail

Select a message ► Press [Options] ► Select **Delete** ► Press ● ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

- To delete all Server Mail, press [Options] ► Select **Delete All** ► Press ● ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

Message Details

Open Server Mail properties

Select a message ► Press [Options] ► Select **Message Details** ► Press ●

- Press ● to return.

Using Messages

Checking Messages

To open Received Msg. folder while using another function, press  for 1+ seconds.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

Messages appear.

- While Information window appears, select **Message** ► Press 
- When folders appear, select one ► Press 
- To open properties (not available for unsent messages), select a message ► Press  **Options** ► Select **Message Details** ► Press 
 - Press  to scroll down.
 - Press  to return.
- To open sender/recipient details, select a received or sent message ► Press  **Options** ► Select **View Mail Address** ► Press  ► Select sender or recipient ► Press 
 - To return, press  ► Press  ► Press 
 - Open sender/recipient details and press  **Options** to copy number/address, save to Phone Book or set as an auto sort key (see P.14-32).

2 Select a message and press

- When an image is attached, press  to open it. Images may not appear if file size is too large.
- When a question appears, press  and enter the correct answer to open the message.
 - Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered.
- Mail Composition window (see P.14-7) opens after opening messages in Drafts.
- Use  to scroll.
- To jump to the top or bottom of the message, press  **Options**
 - Select **Scroll Jump** ► Press  ► Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** ► Press 

Note ► Attached text file contents may not appear correctly.

Changing Encoding

- In Step 1 on the left, select **Received Msg.** and press , then perform Step 2 above and follow these steps.
Press  **Options** ► **Select Char-code** ► **Press**  ► **Select an option** ► **Press** 

Slide Playback

- A slide consists of message text with image/sound or video.
After Step 2 above, press  **Options** ► **Select Slide Play** ► **Press** 
 - Press  to stop.

Editing Sent/Unsent Messages

- In Step 1 on the left, select **Sent Messages** or **Unsent Messages** and press  then follow these steps.
Select a message ► **Press**  **Options** ► **Select Edit & Send or Edit** ► **Press**  ► **Press**  ► **Perform** from Step 5 on P.14-6 or on P.14-8

Copying Message Contents

- After Step 2 on P.14-23, press **Options** → **Select Copy**
 - Press → **Select Address, Subject or Message Text**
 - Press
 - For **Message Text** or **Subject**, use to select the first character of text → Press → Use to select the end point → Press
 - Paste text in other windows (see P.3-13 "Copy/Cut & Paste"). Copied Arrange Mail messages pastes as text; My Pictograms, images, etc. paste as single-byte spaces.
 - Select a folder other than Drafts, Unsent Messages or Templates.

Saving SMS to USIM Card

- In Step 1 on P.14-23, select **Received Msg.** or **Sent Messages** and press then follow these steps.
 - Select an SMS message** → Press **Options** →
 - Select Manage Msg.** → Press → **Select SIM Sync** → Press
 - The number of savable messages varies by USIM Card.
 - **SIM Sync** appears only for compatible USIM Cards.

3D Pictogram

To animate Pictograms, Emoticons and compatible words such as **おはよう**, **食事** and **新幹線** included in the first 150 characters of message text, in 3D, follow these steps after Step 1 on P.14-23.

1 Select a message and press

2 Press **Options**

3 Select **3D Pictogram** and press

Press **Stop** to stop animation.

- Press to pause/resume.

3D Pictogram Settings

Display Effect

Enable or disable 3D Pictogram upon opening received messages

Default Disable

Main Menu

▶ **Messaging** → **Settings** → **General Settings** → **3D Pictogram** → **Display Effect**

Select Always, Only Unread or Disable → Press

Background Colour/ Display Speed

Change background colour and animation speed

Default Background Colour: Random, Display Speed: Standard

Main Menu

▶ **Messaging** → **Settings** → **General Settings** → **3D Pictogram**

Background Colour

Select Background Colour → Press → **Select a colour or Random** → Press

Display Speed

Select Display Speed → Press → **Select speed** → Press

Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete, change the status of or move all selected items simultaneously.

Main Menu

▶ **Messaging**

1 Select a folder and press

When folders appear within, select one → Press

- 2 Select a message and press**  **Check**
 -   appears.
 -  To uncheck, select a message with  ➔ Press  **Uncheck**
- 3 Repeat Step 2 as required**
 -  To uncheck all, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Unselect All** ➔ Press 

Switch to Read/Unread

Change received message status to read or unread.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

- 1 Select *Received Msg.* and press** 
 -  When folders appear, select one ➔ Press 
- 2 *Switching Status of a Message***
 - 1 Select a message and press**  **Options**

Switching Status of Selected Messages

 - 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 above) and press**  **Options**
 - Skip ahead to Step 4.
- 3 Select *Manage Msg.* and press** 
- 4 Select *Switch to Unread* or *Switch to Read* and press** 

Replying to Messages

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

- 1 Select *Received Msg.* and press** 
 -  When folders appear, select one ➔ Press 
- 2 Select a message and press** 
 -  To reply to sender only without quoting text, press  **Reply**
 - ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5
 - Mail Composition window opens.
- 3 Press**  **Options**
- 4 *Replying to SoftBank Handset***
 - 1 Select *Reply* or *Reply All* and press** 
 - 2 Select *S! Mail*, *S! Mail (History)*, *SMS* or *SMS (History)* and press** 
 - For *S! Mail* or *S! Mail (History)*, S! Mail Composition window opens.
 - For *SMS* or *SMS (History)*, SMS Mail Composition window opens.

Replying to E-mail

 - 1 Select *Reply* or *Reply All* and press** 
 - 2 Select *S! Mail* or *S! Mail (History)* and press** 
 - S! Mail Composition window opens.
- 5 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-6 or on P.14-8)**

- Tip ▶**
- Select **Reply All** to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. **Reply All** may not appear for some messages.
 - For **Reply All**, your handset may be included in recipients.
 - Select **SMS (History)** or **S! Mail (History)** to quote the original message text when replying.

Forwarding Messages

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

- 1 Select Received Msg. and press** ●
 ■ When folders appear, select one ➔ Press ●
- 2 Select a message and press** ●
- 3 Press** [Envelope Icon] **Options**
- 4 Select Forward and press** ●
 • For S! Mail messages, S! Mail Composition window opens.
 • To forward SMS messages, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press ●. Mail Composition window opens.
- 5 Select recipient field and press** ●
 Select Recipient window opens.
- 6 Enter recipients and press** ●
 ■ To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on P.14-7.

7 Press [Send Icon] **Send**

- Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

Forwarding Forward NG Messages

- **Sender prohibits forwarding. Forward this message?** appears.

To forward, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

Forwarding Server Mail

- Follow these steps after Step 1 on the left.
 Select an S! Mail Notice ([Envelope Icon]) ➔ Press [Envelope Icon] **Options** ➔
 Select **Forward** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Notifi.**
Forward or Remote Forward ➔ Press ● ➔ Perform from Step 5 in "Forwarding Messages" on the left
- Some messages may not be forwardable.
- **Notifi. Forward** forwards S! Mail Notice subject and message text only.

Cancelling Sent Messages

Send cancellation request to delete sent messages saved in recipient's received message folder. Subjects of cancellation requests are prefaced with **Del:**.

- Available for S! Mail messages sent to compatible SoftBank handsets.
- Sent messages may not be deleted if message text is short.
- Protected sent messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Sent Messages** and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 Select a message and press [Options]

- When selected sent message is addressed to multiple recipients, cancellation request is sent to all the recipients.

3 Select **Set Sent Cancel** and press ●

4 Choose **Yes** and press ●

- Handset receives a Delivery Report.

Linked Info

Saving to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses are selectable with ●.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 Select a message and press ●

3 **Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address**

1 Press [Options]

2 Select **Save Address** and press ●

3 Select a phone number or mail address and press ●

Saving Linked Info

1 Select a phone number or mail address and press ●

2 Select **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** and press ●

4 Select **As New Entry** and press ●

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see P.4-4).

■ To save to an existing Phone Book entry, open one ► Press ● ► Press [Save]

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (*http://*, *https://* or *rtsp://*) within message text to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/URLs are selectable with .

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 Select a message and press

3 *Dialling Numbers*

1 Select a number and press

2 Select *Call* or *Video Call* and press

Sending Messages

1 Select a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

2 Select *Create Message* and press

■ For phone numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* ► Press 
► Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on P.14-6 or on P.14-8.)

■ For mail addresses, complete and send S! Mail (perform from Step 5 on P.14-8).

Accessing Internet Sites

1 Select a URL and press

2 Choose *Yes* and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Video/sound plays for *rtsp://* URLs (see P.15-12 "Streaming").

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages in Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder from unintentional deletion. Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 *Protecting a Message*

1 Select a message and press **Options**

- To cancel protection, select a message with .

Protecting Selected Messages

1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press **Options**

3 Select *Lock* and press

 appears for protected messages.

■ To cancel protection, select *Unlock* ► Press 

Deleting Messages

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Selecting Messages to Delete

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 *Deleting a Message*

1 Select a message and press ☐ Options

Deleting Selected Messages

1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press ☐ Options

3 Select *Delete* and press ●

4 Choose *Yes* and press ●

Tip ► It may take some time to delete messages.

Deleting Delete NG Messages

■ *Sender prohibits deletion. Delete this message?* appears.

To delete, choose *Yes* ► Press ●

• Confirmation does not appear for Delete All.

Deleting Server Mail

■ Select *Received Msg.* in Step 1 on the left and follow these steps.

Select an S! Mail Notice (☐) ► Press ☐ Options ►

Select *Delete* ► Press ● ► Select *Notification*, *Remote Delete* or *Notifi. and Remote* ► Press ● ► Choose *Yes* ► Press ●

• Some messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 Press ☐ Options

• To delete messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select *Manage Msg.* and press ●

4 Select *Delete All* and press ●

■ When folder contains protected messages, select *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ► Press ●

5 Enter Handset Code and press ●

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attached images, sounds, vFiles (Phone Book/schedule entries, etc.) and other files to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 Select a message and press ●

3 Select a file and press [Envelope Icon] **Options**

■ To open properties, select *File Details* ► Press ●

■ Press ● to return.

■ To switch display size, select *Picture Appearance* ► Press ● ► Select *Normal* or *Fit for Screen* ► Press ●

4 Select *Save to Data Folder* and press ●

5 Enter name and press ●

• To save without changing file name, press ● and proceed to Step 6.

6 Select *Save here..* and press ●

Message window returns.

• When memory is full, a confirmation appears. Delete files (see P.8-8) and try again.

■ To save to Memory Card, press [Envelope Icon] **Options** ► Select *Change to Memory Card* ► Press ● ► Select *Save here..* ► Press ●

Using Attachments

Assign attached files as Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo directly from messages and save to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press ●

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press ●

2 Select a message and press ●

3 Select a file and press [Envelope Icon] **Options**

4 *Wallpaper*

1 Select *Save as Wallpaper* and press ●

Ringtone

1 Select *Set as Ringtone* and press ●

Ringvideo

1 Select *Set as Ring Video* and press ●

5 Enter name and press ●

6 Select *Save here..* and press ●

Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo is set.

■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select *Centred*, *Full Screen* or *Fit Image* ► Press ●

7 Press ●

My Folders

Organise received/sent messages into My Folders.
Activate Folder View beforehand (see P.14-4).

Adding My Folders

Create up to 13 folders in addition to default Folder 1 - 7.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press ●
- 2** Press [Envelope] **Options**
- 3** Select *Create New Folder* and press ●
- 4** Enter name and press ●
 - Enter up to 20 characters.

Renaming My Folders

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press ●
- 2** Select a folder (My Folder) and press [Envelope] **Options**

3 Select *Rename* and press ●

■ To select a Secret folder, see P.14-33 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".

4 Enter name and press ●

- Enter up to 20 characters.

Moving Messages

- Protected or incoming linked messages cannot be moved.
- To move files to a Secret folder, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press ●
- 2** Select a folder and press ●
 - To select a Secret folder, see P.14-33 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".
- 3** *Moving a Message*
 - 1** Select a message and press [Envelope] **Options***Moving Multiple Messages*
 - 1** Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-25) and press [Envelope] **Options**
 - Skip ahead to Step 5.
- 4** Select *Manage Msg.* and press ●
- 5** Select *Move to Folder* and press ●
- 6** Select a folder and press ●

Setting Auto Sort Keys

Set keys (sender/recipient, S! Mail subject or SMS message text string) by folder to sort received/sent messages automatically.

- Specify up to 20 keys for each folder including Spam Folder (see **P.14-35** "Anti Spam Measures").
- Keys in folders with smaller numbers have higher priority.
- Settings apply to newly received or sent messages.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press** ●
- 2 Select a folder (My Folder or Spam Folder) and press** ☒ **Options**
 - To select a Secret folder, see **P.14-33** "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".
- 3 Select *My Folders* and press** ●
- 4 Select a blank entry and press** ●
 - To delete entries, select one ► Press ☒ **Options** ► Select **Delete** or **Clear All** ► Press ● ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ●

5 Sort by Sender/Recipient

- 1 Select *Address* and press** ●
- 2 Enter sender/recipient (perform Step 4 on P.14-7)**

■ To change entries, select one ► Press ☒ **Options** ► Select **Replace** ► Press ● ► Perform Step 4 on **P.14-7**

Sort by Subject (S! Mail) or Text String (SMS)

- 1 Select *Subject* and press** ●
- 2 Enter text and press** ●

• Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumeric.

Secret Folder

Hide folders to require Handset Code entry for access. Handset does not respond to messages sorted to Secret folders when Secret Folder (see **P.14-36**) in Message Notice is set to **No Response**.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press** ●
- 2 Select a folder (My Folder) and press** ☒ **Options**
- 3 Select *Set Secret* and press** ●
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press** ●

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret folders, set folders to appear and follow these steps.

After Step 1 in "Secret Folders" on P.14-32,
 press **Options** ➔ **Select *Unlock Temporarily*** ➔
Press ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **Press**

- Secret folders are hidden next time Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder is opened.

Cancel Secret

- Unlock Secret folders temporarily and follow these steps.
Select a Secret folder ➔ **Press Options** ➔ **Select *Unset Secret*** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔
Press

Deleting Folders

Empty folder (move or delete messages) beforehand.

Main Menu ► *Messaging*

- 1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press**
- 2 Select a folder (My Folder or Spam Folder) and press Options**
- 3 Select *Delete* and press**
 - Confirmation appears when auto sort keys are set to the folder. Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press**

Additional Functions

Speed Mail List

Save up to ten frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail (see **P.14-34**). When creating messages, reference recipient addresses from Speed Mail List (see **P.14-7**).

Main Menu ► *Messaging* ➔ *Settings* ➔ *Speed Mail List*

- 1 Select *<empty>* and press**
 - To change entries, select one ➔ Press ➔ Edit number/address ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 - To delete entries, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** or **Clear All** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

2 Phone Book

- 1 Select *Phone Book* and press**
- 2 Select an entry and press**
 - To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Dialling from Phone Book" on **P.4-8**.

Direct Entry

- 1 Select *Enter Number or Enter Address* and press**
- 2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press**

Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

- Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.14-6 or on P.14-7.
Select *Speed Mail List* ➔ Press ● ➔ Select *empty*
➔ Press ● ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press ● ➔ Perform
Step 2 on P.14-33

Speed Mail

Create mail from Standby using numbers/addresses saved to Speed Mail List (see P.14-33).

- 1 In Standby, press Speed Mail List entry number with Keypad (0  - 9 )**
- 2 Press  **Mail****
 ■ When messaging to SoftBank handsets, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➔ Press ●
- 3 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-6 or on P.14-8)**

Auto Resend

Activate Auto Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.

- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Auto Resend is **On** by default.

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ➔ *Settings* ➔ *General Settings* ➔
Auto Resend

- 1 Choose *On* and press ●**

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press ●

- Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

Note ► Auto Resend is available while roaming, however, message delivery may incur higher charges.

General Settings

Sending Progress

Show or hide animation when sending mail

Default Show

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ➔ *Settings* ➔ *General Settings* ➔
Sending Progress

Select *Show* or *Do not Show* ➔ Press ●

Delivery Report

Confirm SMS/S! Mail delivery (see **P.14-19**)

■ Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Default Off

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ►
Delivery Report

Choose *On* (request) or *Off* ► Press ●

- If ***On***, reports arrive for all messages to SoftBank handsets.

Anti Spam Measures

Filter incoming messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book

Default Off

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ►
Anti Spam Measures

Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose *On* or *Off* ► Press ●

- When Anti Spam Measures is active, unsolicited messages (spam) are filtered into ***Spam Folder***.
- Auto sort keys (see **P.14-32**) are available for Spam Folder.
- Keys in folders other than Spam Folder have higher priority.
- Handset does not respond to filtered messages. (No ringtones, Information window, etc.)

Signature Settings

Save a name, etc. to insert into message text

Default Auto Insert: Off

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ►
Signature Settings

Edit

Select *Edit* ► Press ● ► Enter/edit signature ► Press ●

- Enter up to 256 single-byte alphanumerics.

Auto Insert

Select *Auto Insert* ► Press ● ► Choose *On* or *Off* ► Press ●

- When signature is not saved, enter signature ► Press ●
- Activate Auto Insert to enter signature into message text automatically.
- Available only for S! Mail.

Auto Delete

Activate or cancel automatic deletion of oldest received/sent messages to save new ones

Default Received Msg.: Off, Sent Messages: On

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Auto Delete*

Received Messages

Select **Received Msg.** ► Press ● ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press ●

Sent Messages

Select **Sent Messages** ► Press ● ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press ●

Message Notice

Change/hide notice or activate/mute alert sound (double beep) for messages received during handset use

Default View Setting: Name, Alert Sound: On

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Message Notice*

Edit Message

Select **View Setting** ► Press ● ► Select **Name, Address, Name & Subject** or **Off** ► Press ●

Alert Sound

Select **Alert Sound** ► Press ● ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press ●

Secret Folder

Select whether to notify (with ringtones, etc.) of incoming messages sorted to Secret folders

Default Notify

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Message Notice* ► *Secret Folder*

Select **Notify or No Response** ► Press ●

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Default Single Line

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Scroll Unit*

Select **Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page** ► Press ●

SMS Settings

Expiry Time

Set Message Centre sent message storage limit

Default Maximum

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *SMS Settings* ► *Expiry Time*

Select **Maximum, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 6 hours, 1 day or 1 week** ► Press ●

- Expiry Time applies to SMS Centre Number set to **Setting1(Default)** in Message Centre (see P.14-37).

Message Centre

Set SMS Centre Number

Default Setting1 (+819066519300)

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *SMS Settings* ►
Message Centre

Adding Centre Number

Select **Setting2** or **Setting3** ► Press **⓪** ► Enter SMS Centre Number ► Press **⓪**

Editing Centre Number

Select **Setting1(Default)**, **Setting2** or **Setting3** ► Press **⓪** ► Edit SMS Centre Number ► Press **⓪**

Deleting Centre Number

Select **Setting2** or **Setting3** ► Press **☐ Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press **⓪** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press **⓪**

Setting Centre Number

Select **Setting2** or **Setting3** ► Press **☐ Options** ► Select **Set Default** ► Press **⓪**

- Selected number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and shifts the others down.

Note ► Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.

Char-code

Select character encoding for composing SMS messages

Default Shift JIS

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *SMS Settings* ►
Char-code

Select **Shift JIS** (70 characters) or **GSM 7bit** (160 single-byte alphanumeric) ► Press **⓪**

S! Mail Settings

Message DL (Japan)

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using handset in Japan.
Default Always Download

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ►
Message DL (Japan)

Select **Always Download**, **DL only Tel. No.** or **Always Defer** ► Press **⓪**

Note ► Depending on the price plan, transmission fees may apply even when receiving messages addressed to SoftBank handset numbers. Change Message DL setting as needed.

Message DL (Abroad)

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using handset outside Japan.
Default Always Defer

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ►
Message DL (Abroad)

Select **Always Download** or **Always Defer** ► Press **⓪**

Reply To Settings

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

Default Off

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ►
Reply To Settings

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press **⓪**

Set Address

Select **Edit Address** ► Press **⓪** ► Select or enter address ► Press **⓪**

Picture Appearance

Set display size for images in received messages

Default Normal

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ► *Picture Appearance*

Select *Normal* or *Fir for Screen* ► Press ●

- Slides (see **P.14-23**) always play at Normal size.

Auto Play File

Select whether to open/play attached images/sounds automatically

Default Pictures: On, Sounds: Off

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ► *Auto Play File*

Images

Select *Pictures* ► Press ● ► **Choose *On* (open) or *Off* ► Press** ●

Sounds

Select *Sounds* ► Press ● ► **Choose *On* (play) or *Off* ► Press** ●

- Images/sounds always open/play when playing slides (see **P.14-23**).
- Auto Play File settings do not apply to Arrange Mail.

Send File Settings

Select whether to save newly captured images and newly recorded Voice files to Data Folder before attaching them to messages

Default Save & Attach

Main Menu

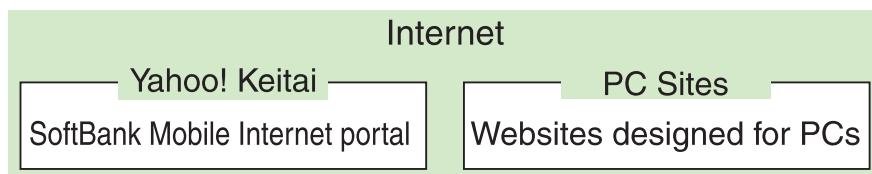
► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *S! Mail Settings* ► *Send File Settings*

Select *Save & Attach* or *Attach Only* ► Press ●

Yahoo! Keitai

Getting Started

Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites.
In this manual, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, "PC sites" to websites viewed via PC Site Browser, and "Internet" to both Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites. Retrieve Network Information (see **P.1-20**) before using the Internet.



Yahoo! Keitai Features

- Using Yahoo! Keitai: see **P.15-3**
- Saving Files to Data Folder: see **P.15-11**
- Streaming: see **P.15-12**
- Live Monitor: see **P.15-14**

PC Site Feature

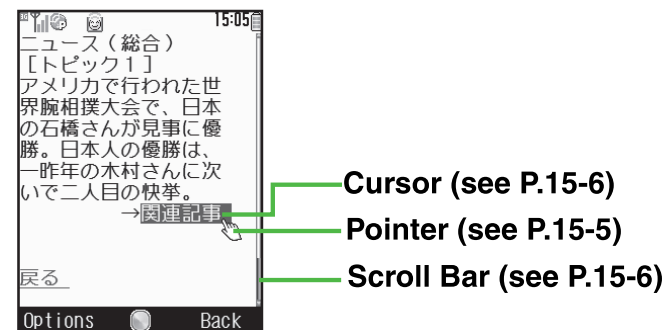
Using PC Site Browser: see **P.15-18**

Note ► Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection and thus transmission fees apply. To disconnect, press .

- Tip** ►
- An additional contract is required to use the Internet.
 - Address questions about Yahoo! Keitai to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

Internet Content

Sample Internet page:



Note ► Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.

Tip ► To activate PC Site Browser while browsing Yahoo! Keitai, see Step 1 in "Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu" on **P.15-3**.

Cache Memory

- Cache Memory temporarily holds copies of retrieved pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
 - Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory.
 - Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.

■ SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see **P.15-22** "Root Certificates").

Disclaimer

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan, Entrust Japan, GeoTrust Japan, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Select topics from Yahoo! Keitai Menu to access sites. Yahoo! Keitai Menu is subject to change.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select **Yahoo! Keitai** and press

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press 
- To activate PC Site Browser, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Change to PC Browser** ➔ Press 
- A message appears. To proceed, press  twice. The current page opens via PC Site Browser.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.

2 Highlight a menu item

3 Press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.
- To disconnect, press .

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

- Basic Operations: see **P.15-5**
- To return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ Press 

5 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Using History

Open previously viewed Yahoo! Keitai pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ► *History*

1 Select an item and press

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Opening Properties

■ Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Details** ► Press

■ Press to return.

Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS

■ Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Send URL** ► Press ► Select **S! Mail or SMS** ► Press ► **Complete and send message** (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-6.)

Sorting Items

■ Open History and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ► Select **Sort** ► Press ► Select **By Domain or By Date** ► Press

Deleting History

■ Open History and follow these steps.

Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

■ To delete all, press **Options** ► Select **Delete All** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access Yahoo! Keitai sites.

- To use History, see left.
- **http://** may be omitted.

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ► *Enter URL*

1 Enter URL and press

- PC Site Browser may activate depending on the URL.

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Selecting from Previously Entered URLs

■ Open URL entry window and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ► Select **URL Entry Log** ► Press ► Select a URL ► Press

- Up to 10 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Basic Operations

Back

Return to the previous page

Press **Back**.

■ To return to the initial page, press **Options** ➔ Select **Forward** ➔ Press

Jump to Top/Bottom

Jump to page top or bottom

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom**
➔ Press

Secure Area

Open secure page

When **Entering highly secure area.** appears, press .

- appears for secure connections.
- To disable confirmations, see **P.15-22** "Secure Prompt".

Authentication

Access pages requiring user authentication

If requested, enter user ID or password ➔ Press
➔ Press **Send**

Help

View a summary of key assignments

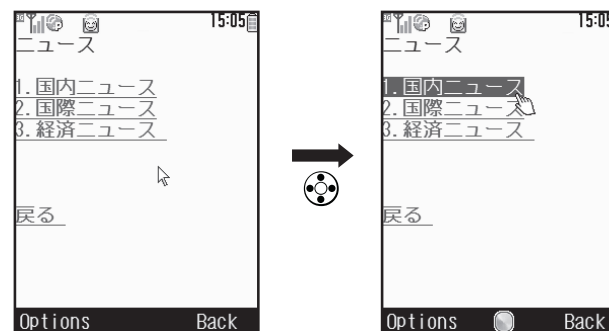
Press **Options** ➔ **Select Help** ➔ Press

■ Press to return.

Pointer Navigation

Move pointer () with Multi Selector to scroll or select items. When page content continues beyond view, move pointer to Display edges to scroll in those directions.

Selecting Items



Activating/Cancelling Pointer Navigation

■ Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Cursor Settings ➔ Press ➔ **Select**
Cursor/Yahoo! Keitai or Cursor/PC Site Browser ➔
Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel pointer navigation.

Changing Pointer Speed

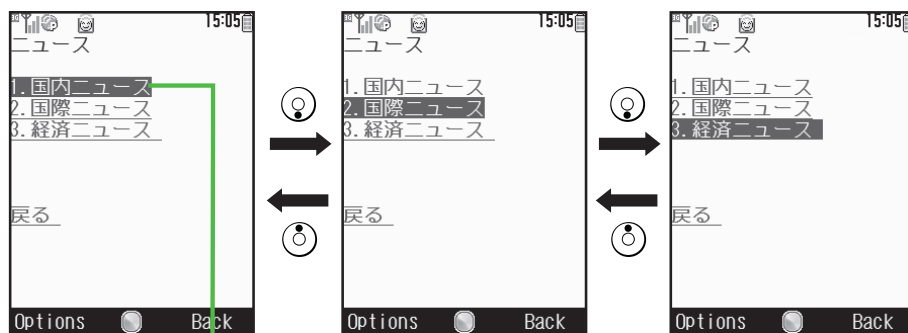
■ Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Cursor Settings ➔ Press ➔ **Select Speed**
Settings ➔ Press ➔ **Select Slow, Normal or Fast**
➔ Press

Using Cursor

When pointer navigation is off, use cursor.

Use  to scroll items.



Cursor

Use  to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

Tip ▶ Press and hold these keys to scroll by page.
 (Up),  (Left),  (Right),  (Down)

Scrolling Pages

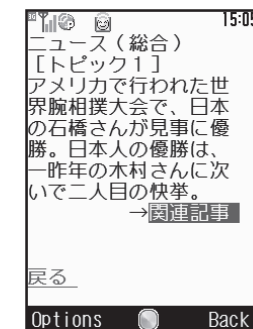
Non-Framed Pages

Scroll bar appears on the right or bottom when page content continues beyond view.

Slider indicates current page position.

Use  to scroll; slider moves accordingly.

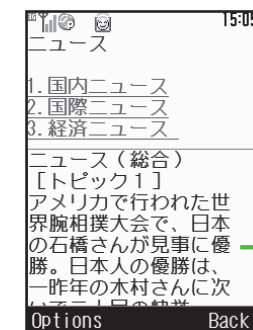
Scroll Bar



Framed Pages

Press  for 1+ seconds to select other frames. Use  to scroll.

Selected Frame



Viewing Single Frame

■ Open a framed page and follow these steps.

Press  for 1+ seconds to select a frame ➔

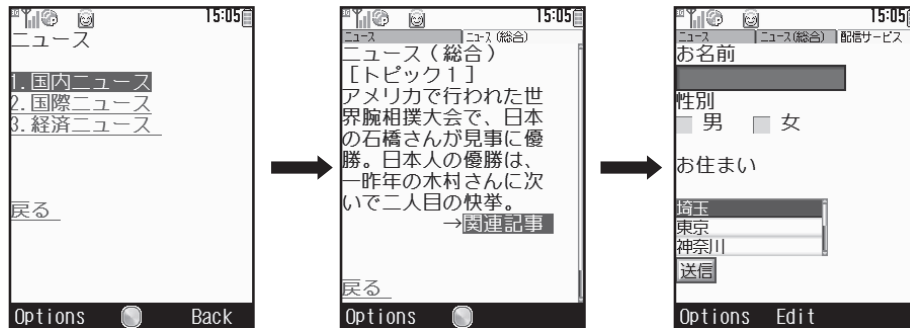
Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Frame In** ➔ Press 

■ To return, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Frame Out** ➔ Press 

■ Alternatively, press  to return.

Tabbed Browsing

Open up to three pages at one time using tabs. Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages cannot be open simultaneously.



1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Open in New Tab** and press

Highlighted link opens in a new tab.

- From Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL and History, the selected/specified page opens in a new tab.

 To open a third page, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Tab Menu** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Open in New Tab** ➔ Press 

 To switch between tabs, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Tab Menu** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Switch Tab** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a tab ➔ Press 

■ Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds then use  to select a tab.

 To close the active tab, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Tab Menu** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Close Tab** ➔ Press 

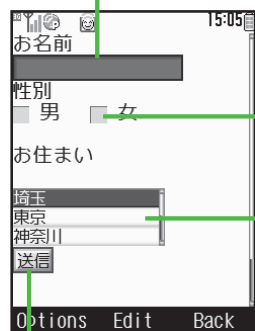
 To close all but the active tab, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Tab Menu** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Close All Other Tabs** ➔ Press 

Note ➤ Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close old tabs.

Tip ➤ Some pages automatically open in a new tab.

Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.



Text Entry Field

- Highlight and press **Enter**. Text entry window opens. Enter text and press **Enter**.

Check-box

- Highlight ☐ (check-box) and press **Enter**. The box changes to ☒, indicating that the item is selected.
- In addition to ☐, ☐ may also appear as selection indicators.

Menu List

- Highlight the field and press **Enter** to select an item. Some menu lists support multiple selection; select items and press **CLEAR/BACK** to exit list.

Command Button

- Use to send, reset, etc.
- Highlight and press **Enter** to execute the indicated command.

Input Memory

- Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Using Input Memory

- In a text entry window, press **Options** → **Select Advanced** → **Press Enter** → **Select Input Memory** → **Press Enter** → **Select text** → **Press Enter**

Advanced Features

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Pages.

Item	Description
Bookmarks	Save links to sites. Handset connects to the Internet to access the site. • Create folders to organise Bookmarks. • Save up to 100 Bookmarks between Yahoo! Keitai and Streaming Bookmarks, and up to 100 for PC sites.
Saved Pages	Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet. • Save frequently used items to Saved Pages. • Save up to 100 Bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.

Default Bookmarks

- **Sharp Space Town** and **sharp** are links to Japanese Mobile Internet sites for SoftBank handsets by SHARP.
 - Visit Space Town to download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.
 - Visit **sharp** to download Custom Screens (see P.9-9).

Saving Bookmarks & Pages

Follow these steps after opening a page (after Step 4 on P.15-3 or on P.15-18).

1 Press  **Options**

- **Bookmark** or **Saved Pages** appears only for savable pages.

2 **Bookmarks**

1 Select **Bookmark** and press 

2 Select **Save** and press 

3 Enter title and press 

- Bookmarks saved while streaming are saved to Streaming Bookmarks.

Saved Pages

1 Select **Saved Pages** and press 

2 Select **Save** and press 

3 Enter title and press 

Saving URLs to Bookmarks

- Enter URLs directly to save site references to Bookmarks.

Press  Select **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ Press  Select **Bookmarks** ➔ Press  Select  (Yahoo! Keitai),  (PC Site Browser) or  (Streaming) ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Add New Bookmark** ➔ Press  Enter URL ➔ Press  Enter title ➔ Press 

Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Bookmarks

1 Select **Bookmarks** and press ●

- To send URLs via S! Mail/SMS, select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Send** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **As Message** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➔ Press ● ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-6 or on P.14-7.)

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if a URL exceeds the SMS character limit.

- To open properties, select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Details** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ● to return.

2 Use ● to select (Yahoo! Keitai), (PC Site Browser) or (Streaming)

Saved Pages

1 Select **Saved Pages** and press ●

- To open properties, select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Details** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ● to return.

2 Use ● to select (Yahoo! Keitai) or (PC Site Browser)



Bookmarks



Saved Pages

2 Select a title and press ●

Opening Bookmarks Online

- Press [Options] ➔ Select **Bookmark** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Open List** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select a title ➔ Press ●

Editing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Open Bookmarks or Saved Pages first (perform Step 1 on the left).

Bookmarks

Edit

Edit titles or URLs

Titles

- Select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Edit** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **Title:** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter title ➔ Press ● ➔ Press [Save]

URLs

- Select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Edit** ➔ Press ● ➔ Select **URL:** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter URL ➔ Press ● ➔ Press [Save]

Bookmarks Folder

Sort Bookmarks into folders

Creating a Folder

- Press [Options] ➔ Select **Create Folder** ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter name ➔ Press ●

Moving to Folder

- Select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press [Folder] ➔ Select a folder ➔ Press ● ➔ Press ●

- To move back from folders, select a title ➔ Press [Options] ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press ● ➔ Press [Parent] ➔ Press ●

Changing Folder Names

Select a folder ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Rename** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press 

■ Saved Pages

Rename Change titles

Select a title ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Rename** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter title ➔ Press 

■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Move Change entry order

Select a title ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press  ➔ Use  to select target location ➔ Press 

Delete Delete entries

Select a title or folder ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
 ■ To delete all titles/folders, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Delete All** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

Saving Files to Data Folder

Save images, sounds, etc. on Yahoo! Keitai to Data Folder.

Main Menu ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Open a page

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Save Items** and press

- If there is only one file, skip ahead to Step 4.
- To save background image, select **Save Background Image** ➔ Press  ➔ Skip ahead to Step 4
 - **Save Background Image** appears for pages with background images.

3 Select a file and press

- To open files, select **View** or **Play** ➔ Press 
 - Press  to return.
- To open properties, select **Details** ➔ Press 
 - Press  to return.

4 Select **Save** and press

- Data Folder opens.
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ➔ Press 
- To save to a sub folder, select folder ➔ Press 

5 Press

- File is saved to Data Folder.
- Handle File(s) menu may open with available file functions.
- When memory is full, notification appears. Delete files and try again (see **P.8-8**).
- If the same file name exists, select **Rename**, **Overwrite** or **Cancel** ➔ Press 

Clicking on File Links

- Some files are saved automatically. Save location is indicated after download.

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers (**TEL:**), addresses or URLs (**http://**, **https://** or **rtsp://**) to place calls, send messages or access the Internet.

- Available only when number, address or URL is underlined.
- Underlined words may serve as a linked number, address or URL.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Yahoo! Keitai

1 Open a page containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 *Dialling Numbers*

1 Highlight a number and press ●

2 Select *Call* or *Video Call* and press ●

Sending Messages

1 Highlight a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press ●

2 Select *Create Message* and press ●

■ To complete and send message, perform from Step 5 on P.14-6 or on P.14-8.

Accessing Internet Sites

1 Highlight a URL and press ●

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Video/sound plays for **rtsp://** URLs.

Saving to Phone Book

■ To save as new entry, open page and follow these steps.

Select a phone number or mail address ► Press ●

► Select *Save to Phone Book* ► Press ● ►

Select *As New Entry* ► Press ●

■ Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields and save.

■ To save as new item, open page and follow these steps.

Select a phone number or mail address ► Press ●

► Select *Save to Phone Book* ► Press ● ►

Select an entry ► Press ● ► Press  Save

Streaming

Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.

- Only compatible Yahoo! Keitai files support streaming.
- Downloaded content cannot be saved.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Yahoo! Keitai ► *Open a page*

1 Select a file and press ●

Streaming begins. (Playing Music/Video: see P.7-4, P.7-8)

■ To pause a stream, press ●.

■ Press ● to resume.

■ Streaming requires a continuous Internet connection. (Transmission fees apply.)

Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

- Streaming stops for incoming calls. Press **●** to answer calls.
To reject calls, press **☒ Options** ➔ **Select Reject** ➔ **Press ●**
 - After the call, **Reconnect?** appears.
- Notice appears or a double beep sounds for incoming mail (see **P.14-36** "Message Notice").

Note ➤

- Streaming continues even after handset is closed.
- After three minutes on pause, **Reconnect?** appears.
- Live streaming does not support pause, fast forward, rewind or Options.

Tip ➤ Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved. When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

Changing Display Size

- Press **2 か ABC** to toggle Display Size for current stream.
 - Display Size toggles as follows: **Full Screen** (no indicators) ➔ **Full Screen** (with indicators) ➔ **Normal** ➔ **Enlarge**
 - Display Size cannot be changed while stream is paused; press **2 か ABC** to show or hide indicators.
 - Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.
- Change Display Size setting for streaming while streaming.
Press ☒ Options ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ **Press ●** ➔ **Select Display Size** ➔ **Press ●** ➔ **Select Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen** ➔ **Press ●**

Backlight

- Adjust streaming Backlight while streaming.
Press ☒ Options ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ **Press ●** ➔ **Select Backlight** ➔ **Press ●** ➔ **Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Settings** ➔ **Press ●**
 - Selecting **Normal Settings** applies Display Backlight setting (see **P.9-13**).

Time Search

■ Specify start point while streaming.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Time Search** ➔ Press ➔ **Enter time** ➔ Press

Streaming from Media Player

Access the Internet from Media Player

Main Menu ➔ **Media Player** ➔ **Streaming**

Resuming the File Played Last

Select **Last Played** ➔ Press

- File plays from where it stopped.

Entering URLs

Select **Enter URL** ➔ Press ➔ Enter URL ➔ Press

- Enter up to 1,024 characters.

Using Bookmarks

Select **Bookmarks** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press

Using History

Select **History** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press

- To open properties, select **History** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Details** ➔ Press
 - Press to return.

- To edit and access URLs, select **History** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Edit URL** ➔ Press ➔ Edit URL ➔ Press

Tip ➔ Select **Settings** in Streaming menu and press to set Backlight and Display Size.

Live Monitor (Japanese Only)

Live Monitor Basics

Register with compatible Yahoo! Keitai content to receive update notices on handset.

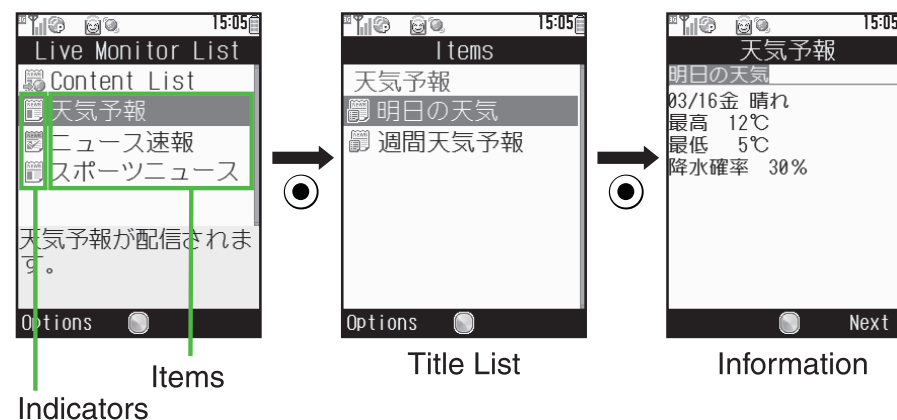
- Live Monitor consists of Live Monitor List and S! Loop List.
- In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (see P.9-6).

Opening Live Monitor List & S! Loop List

Main Menu ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ **Live Monitor**

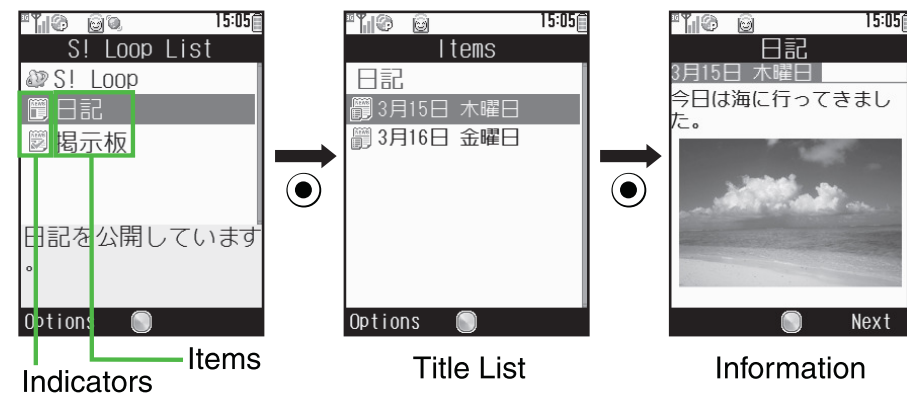
1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press

Live Monitor List



	Unread News Flash		Unread General news
	Read News Flash		Read General news
	News Flash auto update disabled		General news auto update disabled

S! Loop List



	Unread S! Loop
	Read S! Loop
	S! Loop auto update disabled

Opening Information

Live Monitor List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select **Live Monitor List** and press
- 2 Select an item and press
Title list appears (see P.15-14).
- 3 Select a title and press
Information appears (see P.15-14).
 - To access the Internet, select the title in information ➔
Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 - Handset connects to the Internet.

S! Loop List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select **S! Loop List** and press
- 2 Select an item and press
Title list appears (see left).
- 3 Select a title and press
Information appears (see left).
 - To access the Internet, select the title in information ➔
Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 - Handset connects to the Internet.

Registering with Live Monitor Items

Live Monitor List

Register with up to one News Flash item and four General news items.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select **Live Monitor List** and press
- 2 Select **Content List** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press
Handset connects to the Internet.
- 4 Select an item and press
 - Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Loop List

Register with up to five S! Loop items.

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *Live Monitor*

- 1** Select *S! Loop List* and press ●
- 2** Select *S! Loop* and press ●
- 3** Choose *Yes* and press ●

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Updating Live Monitor Items

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *Live Monitor*

- 1** Select *Live Monitor List* or *S! Loop List* and press ●
- 2** *Updating Single Items*
 - 1** Select an item and press ☐ **Options**
 - 2** Select *Reload* and press ●
 - 3** Select *Reload This Monitor* and press ●

Updating All Items

- 1** Press ☐ **Options**
- 2** Select *Reload* and press ●
- 3** Select *Reload All* and press ●

Opening Properties

- Open Live Monitor List or S! Loop List (see P.15-14) and follow these steps.

Select an item ➔ **Press** ☐ **Options** ➔ **Select Details**
➔ **Press** ●

Automatic Update

- Update Live Monitor items automatically after a set interval (from Automatic Update activation). Open properties (see above) to see next Automatic Update time.
- Automatic Update does not affect Live Monitor List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- Automatic Update is only available in Japan.
- Update may fail if signal is weak/handset is out-of-range.
- To update manually, see left.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.
- Automatic Update is **Off** by default.

Live Monitor List

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor ► Settings ►
Automatic Update ► Live Monitor

1 News Flash

1 Select **News Flash** and press ●

2 Press ●

3 Select an interval and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

General News

1 Select **General** and press ●

2 Press ●

3 Choose **On** and press ●

• General news items are updated once a day.

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

S! Loop List

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor ► Settings ►
Automatic Update ► S! Loop

1 Press ●

2 Choose **On** and press ●

• S! Loop List items are updated approximately four times a day.

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

Deleting Live Monitor Items

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor

1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press ●

2 Deleting Single Items

1 Select an item and press [Options]

2 Select **Delete** and press ●

3 Select **Delete This Monitor** and press ●

4 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Deleting All Items

1 Press [Options]

2 Select **Delete** and press ●

3 Select **Delete All** and press ●

4 Enter Handset Code and press ●

5 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Note ► Items are not deleted during auto updates.

Using PC Site Browser

Activate PC Site Browser to view websites designed for PCs; only document files are downloadable and browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

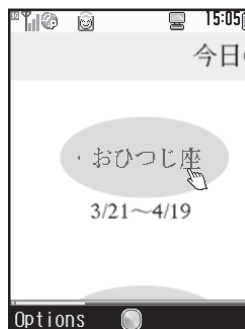
Opening Yahoo! JAPAN

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *PC Site Browser*

1 Select **Homepage** and press

A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens (appears).

- To open Yahoo! Keitai, press **Options**
 - ▶ Select **Switch Browser** ▶ Press
 - A message appears. To proceed, press twice. The current page opens via Yahoo Keitai.
 - Some sites may not appear correctly.



2 Highlight a menu item

3 Press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.
- To disconnect, press .

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

- Basic Operations: see **P.15-5**
- Saving Bookmarks & Pages: see **P.15-9**
- Using Linked Info: see **P.15-12**
- To return to Yahoo! JAPAN Home, press **Options** ▶ Select **Homepage** ▶ Press

5 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Switching View

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ▶ Select **PC Screen** ▶ Press

- To switch from PC Screen view to Small Screen view, press **Options** ▶ Select **Small Screen** ▶ Press
- In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
- In PC Screen view, PC sites appear in W 800 x H 600 dots.

Zoom

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ▶ Select **Convenient Functions** ▶

Press ▶ Select **Zoom** ▶ Press ▶ Select a scale ▶ Press

Using History

Open previously viewed pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *PC Site Browser* ▶ *History*

1 Select an item and press ●

To open properties, send URL, sort items or delete, see P.15-4.

2 To exit, press ☎ then choose *Yes* and press ●

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access sites.

- To use History, see above.
- *http://* may be omitted.

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *PC Site Browser* ▶ *Enter URL*

1 Enter URL and press ●

- Yahoo! Keitai page may open depending on the URL.
- Selecting from Previously Entered URLs: see P.15-4

2 To exit, press ☎ then choose *Yes* and press ●

Additional Functions

Sub Menu Settings

Access Options menu settings from an open page.

Copy Text Copy text

Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select *Copy Text* ➔ Press ● ➔ Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-14

Reload Update page content

Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select *Reload* ➔ Press ●

- Reload simultaneously updates the corresponding content saved in Saved Pages.

Enter URL Enter URL directly to access Internet sites

Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select *Enter URL* ➔ Press ● ➔ Perform from Step 1 in "Entering URLs Directly" on P.15-4 or on the left.

Search Search current page

Press ☐ **Options** ➔ Select *Convenient Functions* ➔ Press ● ➔ Select *Search* ➔ Press ● ➔ Enter text to search ➔ Press ●

- First search result is highlighted; press ● to jump to next.
- To cancel, press ☐ **Cancel**.

Send URL

Send URLs via S! Mail/SMS

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
 Press ➔ **Select Send URL** ➔ Press ➔ **Select S! Mail or SMS** ➔ Press ➔ **Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-7 or on P.14-6.)**

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if a URL exceeds the SMS character limit.

Details

Open page properties

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
 Press ➔ **Select Details** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Page Information or Server Certificate** ➔ Press
 Press to return.

History

Previously visited Internet site links

Press **Options** ➔ **Select History** ➔ Press ➔ **Perform from Step 1 in "Using History" on P.15-4 or on P.15-19**

Char-code

Change encoding when text appears distorted

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Char-code** ➔ Press ➔ **Select an option** ➔ Press

- Use Automatic whenever possible.

Uploading Files

Upload images or other Data Folder files to the Centre via Internet sites

Open compatible site first.

Select Browse... ➔ Press ➔ **Select a file** ➔
 Press ➔ **Select Send** ➔ Press

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

Common Settings**Font Size**

Change character size

Default Standard

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Font Size*

Select a size ➔ Press

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Default Single Line

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Scroll Unit*

Select a unit ➔ Press

Downloads

Select whether to download images and sounds on Internet sites automatically or to open text information only

Default Show Images/Play Sounds

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Downloads*

Images

Select Images ➔ Press ➔ **Select Show Images or Do not Show** ➔ Press

Sounds

Select Sounds ➔ Press ➔ **Select Play Sounds or Do not Play** ➔ Press

Memory Operation

Clear cache, cookies or authentication information

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Memory Operation*

Select **Delete Cache**, **Delete Cookies** or **Delete Auth Info** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

• Deleted Items:

Cache	Temporarily saved information in Cache Memory
Cookies	Information sent by a server for user identification
Auth Info	User ID or password previously entered for authentication

Download to

Select whether to save downloaded files on handset or Memory Card

Default Phone Preferred

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Download to*

Select **Phone Preferred** or **Prefer Card** ➔ Press ●

- If selected memory is low, downloaded files are not saved.
- Saving to Memory Card is prohibited depending on the file; such files are saved to handset.

Initialized Browser

Restore default settings and reset Bookmarks and Saved Pages

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Initialized Browser*

Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

Reset Settings

Restore default settings

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Reset Settings*

Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ●

PC Site Browser Settings**Warning Message**

Show or hide warning message when activating PC Site Browser or when switching to Yahoo! Keitai

Default On

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *PC Site Browser* ➔ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➔ *Warning Message*

Select **PC Site Browser** or **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ Press ● ➔ Choose **On (show)** or **Off** ➔ Press ●

Zoom Setting

Select page scale

Default 100%

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *PC Site Browser* ➔ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➔ *Zoom Setting*

Select a scale ➔ Press ●

Security Settings

Security Settings affect both Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

Manufacture Number

Select whether or not to send handset manufacture number automatically for authentication

Default Off

Main Menu▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *Common Settings* ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ *Manufacture Number*

Choose **On (send)** or **Off** ➔ Press ●

Send Referer

Select whether or not to send referer information to the Server

Default Send

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Send Referer

Select **Send or Not Send** ► Press ●

Cookies

Enable or disable cookies (see P.15-21)

Default Enabled

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Cookies

Select **Enabled, Disabled or Confirm** ► Press ●

Script Settings

Select whether or not to run scripts

Default On

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Script Settings

Select **On, Ask NW Access, Confirm or Off** ► Press ●

Secure Prompt

Show or hide confirmations before entering and exiting secure pages (see P.15-3)

Default Show

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Secure Prompt

Select **Show or Do not Show** ► Press ●

Root Certificates

Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities saved on handset

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings

Select **Root Certificates (preloaded certificates)** ► Press ●

- To open certificates, select one ► Press ●
- Press ● to return.

Keep Auth Info

Previously entered user ID or password is entered automatically for authentication

Default Per Browsing

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Keep Auth Info

Select **Per Browsing, On (authenticate automatically) or Off** ► Press ●

- For **Per Browsing**, entered user ID or password remains for automatic authentication and is deleted upon exiting the Internet.
- For **On**, entered user ID or password remains even after exiting the Internet or turning handset power off.

Tip ► Saved user ID or password is applicable to Basic/Digest authentication. Some sites may employ other HTTP authentication schemes.

Flash[®] Restriction

Select whether or not to restrict Flash[®] downloads

Default On

Main Menu

► Yahoo! Keitai ► Common Settings ► Security Settings ► Flash[®] Restriction

Choose **On (restrict) or Off** ► Press ●

S! Applications

Getting Started

Download S! Applications, including games.

Download and use 812SH/813SH compatible S! Applications.

- Tip ▶**
- Separate subscriptions are required for S! Applications downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai.
 - Address questions about S! Applications to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).
 - Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted (see **P.16-5**). To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see **P.16-8**).

Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli, an S! Application required to use S! FeliCa, is preloaded on handset (see **P.17-2**). Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications.

Network S! Applications

- Network S! Applications require Internet connection.
 - Before using a Network S! Application, a message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.16-7**.

S! Appli Library

Open S! Appli Library to access S! Applications saved on handset or Memory Card.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli

1 Select **S! Appli** and press

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 
 - Options ▶** Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card ▶** Press 
- To open Java™ Licence Information, select **Information ▶** Press 

- Tip ▶** When  is pressed in Standby with an S! Application paused, **Application is suspended.** appears. Select **End** and press  to open S! Appli Library.

Memory Status

- Press  **▶ Select Data Folder ▶** Press  **▶ Select Memory Status ▶** Press  **▶ Select Phone Memory or Memory Card ▶** Press 

S! Applications on Memory Card

Synchronise Memory Cards used on other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to update S! Appli Library. Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see **P.1-20**).

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Synchronisation

1 Choose **Yes** and press

Tip ► It may take some time to update S! Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Downloading S! Applications

- Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see **P.1-20**).
- Some S! Applications can be downloaded to Memory Cards.
- Make sure signal is strong.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli ► Download

1 Open an Internet site offering S! Applications

2 Select an S! Application and press

Properties appear.

 When an S! Application is paused, choose **Yes** ► Press 

3 Press **Yes**

Download starts.

- Download may take time.

 Press  to cancel.

4 Downloaded S! Application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears

- When you download a new version of S! Application set as Screensaver (see **P.16-6**), Screensaver may be cancelled.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

Internet connection ends and S! Appli Library opens.

 To return to the site, choose **No** and press .

 Starting S! Applications: see **P.16-4**

Tip ► Some S! Applications require permission settings. Follow onscreen prompts to use the S! Application (may only be available in Japanese).

Properties

Check S! Application properties before completing download.

Using S! Applications

Starting S! Applications

Main Menu ► S! Appli

1 Select **S! Appli** and press ●

S! Appli Library opens (see P.16-2).

2 Select an **S! Application** and press ●

S! Application starts.

- For operations, refer to the source Internet site, etc.
- If the S! Application cannot be used, S! Appli Library returns.

Tip ► S! Applications automatically pause for incoming transmissions. To set handset to ignore them, see P.16-8 "Calls & Alarms".

Starting Network S! Applications

- If Internet connection confirmation appears after Step 2 above:
Choose Yes or No ► Press ● ► S! Application starts
 - To skip confirmation, select **Never Ask** for Network Access (see P.16-7 "Setting Permissions").
- Some S! Applications require permission settings (see P.16-7).

Exit, Pause & Resume

Exiting or Pausing S! Applications

1 Press while using an S! Application

2 **Exiting S! Application**

1 Select **End** and press ●

S! Appli Library returns.

Pausing S! Application

1 Select **Suspend** and press ●

Handset returns to Standby.

- S! Application resumes from pause point.

Resuming S! Applications

1 While an S! Application is paused, press ● in Standby

2 Select **Resume** and press ●

- To end the S! Application, select **End** ► Press ●
- To open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused, select **Cancel** ► Press ●

Managing S! Applications

Opening S! Application Properties

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Details** and press

Title	Title of the S! Application
Vendor	Name of the distributor (or supplier/manufacturer)
Version	Version of the S! Application
Description	Description of the S! Application
Save Size	Downloaded file size
Recorded	Record game scores, etc. up to this size
Screensaver	Compatibility with Screensaver
Profile	Versions: VSCL (Overseas)/JSCL (Domestic)
Link	Link to source Internet site
Certification	Trusted/Untrusted
Cert. Subject	Authority of Certification (Common Name, Country and Organization)
Push	Compatibility with automatic Internet connection
IC Support	Compatibility with Lifestyle-Appli
Book Support	Compatibility with book viewing

Press to scroll down.

Moving S! Applications to Memory Card

To move an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Move to Card** and press

- When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press
- Choose **Yes** and press to overwrite.

- Note** ►
- S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same S! Application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low.
 - Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Deleting S! Applications

To delete an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Delete** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press
 - Handset Code may be required.

Tip ► Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted. To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see P.16-8).

Screensaver

Set an S! Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

Activating/Cancelling Screensaver

Screensaver is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Screensaver ► Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●

Setting Screensaver

- Only one compatible S! Application can be set for Screensaver.
- Screensaver cannot be set when another S! Application is paused.
- Lifestyle-Appli and S! Applications on Memory Card cannot be set.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

1 Select an S! Application and press ☐ Options

2 Select **As Screensaver** and press ●

- **As Screensaver** appears for compatible S! Applications.

Activation Time

■ Enter time delay before Screensaver activates in Standby.

Press ● ► Select **S! Appli** ► Press ● ► Select **Settings** ► Press ● ► Select **Screensaver** ► Press ● ► Select **Activation Time** ► Press ● ► Enter time (01 - 10 seconds) ► Press ●

- Activation Time is **3** seconds by default.

Note ►

- Screensaver does not start when Headphones are connected.
- Connecting Headphones (with Memory Card inserted) cancels an active Screensaver.
- Screensaver may not start when an external device (handsfree kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
- Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

Setting Permissions

Customise the method of confirmation, etc. for each S! Application operation below.

- Settings:

Phone Call	Place Voice Calls
Network Access	Connect to the Internet
Messaging	Send/receive messages
Autorun	Execute Autorun files
Bluetooth Conn.	Connect via Bluetooth®
Local Connection	Connect to other devices
Read User Data	Access Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Write User Data	Edit Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Use Multimedia	Use Media Player
Location Access	Send Location Information

- These settings are also available for S! Applications on Memory Card.
- Permission settings may not be available for some S! Applications.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Permission** and press 
- 3 Select an item and press 
- 4 Select an option and press 

- Some options may not appear.

Ask Once	Confirmation appears every time the S! Application starts
Always Ask	Confirmation appears before the specific operation
Never Ask	No confirmation
No	Reject the operation

Resetting Permission Settings

- Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left.

Select **Reset Settings** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes**
► Press 

S! Application Operational Settings

Application Volume

Adjust the volume of S! Application sounds

Default Level 3

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Application Volume

Use  to adjust level ► Press 

- In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for S! Applications

Default Normal Settings

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Backlight ► Switch On/Off

Select **Always On**, **Always Off** or **Normal Settings** ► Press 

Always On	Backlight remains on while S! Application runs
Always Off	Backlight remains off while S! Application runs
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-13)

Blink

When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible S! Applications play

Default On

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Backlight ► Blink

Choose **On (activate) or Off** ► Press ●

Vibration

When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play

Default On

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Vibration

Choose **On (activate) or Off** ► Press ●

- In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.

Calls & Alarms

Select handset response to incoming calls, etc. while an S! Application is active

Default Accept Calls, Alarm/Start Priority, Message Notice

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Calls & Alarms

Select from **Voice Calls to Start Demand** ► Press ●
► Select handset response ► Press ●

Accept Calls, Message/Alarm/Start Priority	S! Application pauses for incoming call/mail, Alarm or S! Appli Request
Show Call Notice, Message/Alarm/Start Notice	A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1 appears. Press  to answer a call.

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for S! Applications started from Screensaver.

Reset**Set to Default**

Reset S! Application settings

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Set to Default

Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

Memory All Clear

Restore S! Appli Library to default setting

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings ► Memory All Clear

Enter Handset Code ► Press ● ► Choose Yes ► Press ●

- Note** ►
- Memory All Clear deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
 - Memory All Clear resets Near Chat application password and thus cancels Near Chat access restriction.
 - Preloaded S! Applications are restored.

S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)

Not Available for 813SH for Biz Users

Basics

S! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available via FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 812SH and 813SH support S! FeliCa. To use services such as e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems, simply hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

FeliCa

- A contactless IC card technology enabling wireless data transmissions with compatible reader/writer terminals

IC Card

- The FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible handsets
- Holds information required to use S! FeliCa

Lifestyle-Appli

- S ! Applications required to use S! FeliCa
 - Edy e-money Lifestyle-Appli is preloaded on handset.
 - Edy is a prepaid e-money service run by bitWallet Inc.

Note ► IC Card data content varies by service and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact service providers for details.

Service Usage Outline

Download Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet site.

- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Lifestyle-appli folder.



Complete Registration/Set Up

Activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration/ customise settings.

- Charge accounts, check balance or payment records, etc.



Use Service

To use S! FeliCa at shops, restaurants, and locations, place logo over reader/writer.

- Use e-money/e-tickets to shop/travel; earn reward points.

- Note ►**
- Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage vary; contact the service provider for details.
 - SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.
 - Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

To use S! FeliCa, activate a service Lifestyle-Appli and complete service registration, setup, charge, balance check, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli

1 Select **Lifestyle-appli** and press ●

■ To download a Lifestyle-Appli, select **Download** ▶ Press ●

2 Select an application and press ●

Lifestyle-Appli starts.

■ To end the Lifestyle-Appli, press [⏮].

Note ▶ Lifestyle-Appli cannot be started during calls or when another S! Application is active.

Tip ▶ Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications (see **P.16-5 - 16-8**). However, Lifestyle-Appli cannot be set as Screensaver.

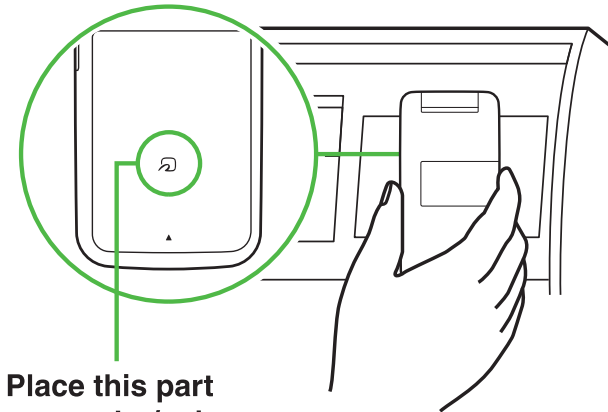
Using S! FeliCa

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction.

Example: making an electronic payment:

- Complete registration, setup and charge in advance.
- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli.

1 Place logo over reader/writer



Place this part
over reader/writer

- The illustration above is for reference only.
- Confirm scan results on reader/writer display.
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.

Note ▶

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.
- Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

- Tip ▶**
- When placed over sensor, handset may display a message, vibrate or activate mail, Internet or an S! Application for some services. To disable response, see **P.17-7** "Interface Settings".
 - Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card even during calls or Internet transmissions. (It may take some time.)

When Handset Power is Off

- Transactions possible; Lifestyle-Appli does not start automatically.
 - After installing/reinstalling battery, always turn on handset power to use S! FeliCa.

When Battery is Low

- S! FeliCa is not available. Charge it beforehand.

S! FeliCa Settings

IC Card Status

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings

1 Select **IC Card Status** and press ●

- If IC Card Lock is set, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ●
- Press ● to return.

IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorised use of S! FeliCa on handset.

IC Card Lock is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ IC Card Lock

1 Choose **On** and press ●

- To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press ●

2 Enter Handset Code and press ●

3 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Remote Lock

Send mail with specified subject (Mail Remote Lock) or call from a specified phone (Call Remote Lock).

Preparation on Handset

Mail Remote Lock Password/Address

Save a password for Mail Remote Lock, and set mail address to send IC Card Lock notice to.

Main Menu ► *Lifestyle-appli* ► *IC Card Settings* ► *Remote Lock*

- 1** Enter Handset Code and press ●
- 2** Select *Mail Remote Lock* and press ●
- 3** Select *Remote Lock PW* and press ●
- 4** Enter a password and press ●
 - Enter between 5 and 16 alphanumeric.
- 5** Select *LockNoticeSettings* and press ●
- 6** Select *Email Lock Notice* and press ●

7 Sending Notice to Remote Lock Activator

- 1** Select *As Reply* and press ●

■ Press  to return.

Sending Notice to Specified Address

- 1** Select *AddressTo Notice* and press ●
- 2** Select *Address to Notice* and press ●
- 3** Select *Phone Book, Enter Number or Enter Address* and press ●
- 4** Select/enter mail address or SoftBank handset number and press ●

Disabling Notice

- 1** Choose *Off* and press ●

■ Press  to return.

8 To save settings without enabling Mail Remote Lock, press **Save**

- To enable Mail Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" on P.17-6 and choose **On** in Step 4.

■ Call Remote Lock Number/Count for Lock

Save up to two phone numbers from which to call handset, and set Missed Call count required to activate IC Card Lock (default count is 3 times).

Enable Remote Lock activation via public phones.

Main Menu ► Lifestyle-appli ► IC Card Settings ► Remote Lock

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press ●
- 2 Select **Call Remote Lock** and press ●
- 3 Select **Phone No. to Lck 1** and press ●
 - To enable activation via public phone, select **Set Public Phone** ► Press ● ► Choose **On** ► Press ●
 - To disable activation via public phone, choose **Off**.
- 4 Select **Phone Book** or **Enter Number** and press ●
- 5 Select/enter a phone number and press ●
 - To save second phone number, select **Phone No. to Lck 2** ► Press ● ► Repeat Steps 4 - 5
- 6 Select **Count for Lock** and press ●
 - **3 times** is set by default.

7 Enter Missed Call count (3 - 10 consecutive times) required to activate IC Card Lock and press ●

- To enable Call Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" below and choose **On** in Step 4.

8 To save settings without enabling Mail Remote Lock, press [Y] Save

Remote Lock Setup

Activate or cancel Mail Remote Lock/Call Remote Lock. Both Remote Locks are **Off** by default.

Main Menu ► Lifestyle-appli ► IC Card Settings ► Remote Lock

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press ●
- 2 Select **Mail Remote Lock** or **Call Remote Lock** and press ●
- 3 Select **Switch On/Off** and press ●
- 4 Choose **On** and press ●
 - To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press ●
 - Saved mail address and phone numbers remain. Reactivate Remote Lock to use the same setting.
- 5 Press [Y] Save

Activating Remote Lock

■ Via Mail

1 Use S! Mail/e-mail to send password to handset

- Enter password as subject; leave other fields blank.
- To confirm IC Card Lock status, send a message via phone or PC with specified mail address (see **P.17-5** "Mail Remote Lock Password/Address").

After Handset Receives Message

- IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent from handset to specified mail address.

Note ► If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

■ Via Phone

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

2 End the call

The call is recorded as a Missed Call on your handset.

- Within three minutes, repeat Steps 1 - 2 until the specified number of Missed Calls are recorded.
- Public phones can be used for this function if Set Public Phone is activated beforehand.
- Send Caller ID when placing calls from specified phone. (Caller ID is not required for public phones.)

After Specified Number of Missed Calls

- IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation.

- Note** ►
- Missed Call count is reset by calls from numbers not saved for this function. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
 - When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Interface Settings

Set handset response to reader/writer commands: Choose **On** for **S! Appli** to activate S! Application, **Browser** to access Internet, **Messaging** to activate mail, **Vibration** to vibrate handset, and **Pop-up Message** to open pop-up message. Interface Settings is **On** for all items by default.

Main Menu ► Lifestyle-appli ► IC Card Settings ► Interface Settings

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press ●
- 2 Select from **S! Appli** to **Pop-up Message** and press ●
- 3 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ●

Resetting Defaults

Cancel custom settings and return S! FeliCa settings to their defaults.

Main Menu ► *Lifestyle-appli* ► *IC Card Settings* ► *Set to Default*

1 Enter Handset Code and press ●

2 Choose *Yes* and press ●

- Note** ►
- Set to Default does not delete downloaded Lifestyle-Appli.
 - Reset All (see **P.9-28**)/Memory All Clear (see **P.16-8**) returns Lifestyle-Appli settings to defaults; all downloaded Lifestyle-Applications are deleted. If IC Card data remains, Reset All and Memory All Clear are disabled.

Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese Only)

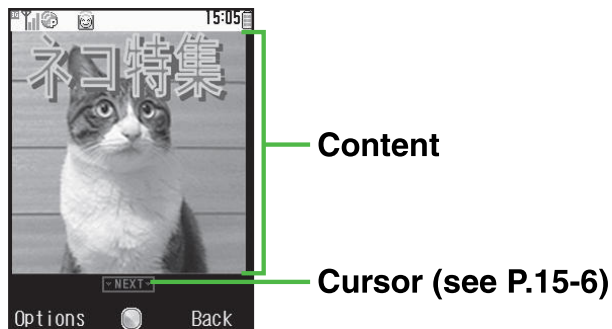
Basics

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically overnight.

- A separate subscription and registration are required.
- After registration, Weather Indicator (see **P.18-4**) appears in Standby.
- Only available within Japan on compatible 3G handsets.
- Retrieve Network Information (see **P.1-20**) before using S! Cast.

S! Cast Content

Sample S! Cast information page:



Service Registration & Content Subscription

Complete service registration to use S! Cast, then subscribe to content.

Registration and subscription require Internet use (connection fees apply). Confirm signal strength beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ *Entertainment* ▶ *CAST*

1 Select **Registration/Cancel** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and service registration page opens.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Received Information

New Received Information

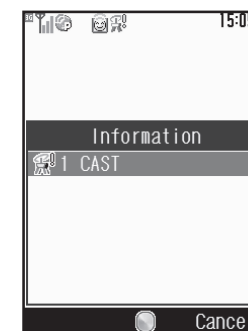
1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens for new information

- If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.

2 Select **CAST** and press

Information appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Information handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.
 - Using Cursor: see **P.15-6**
 - Saving Files to Data Folder: see **P.15-11**
 - Using Linked Info: see **P.15-12**



Information

3 Press to exit

Requesting Re-Delivery

■ If information delivery fails, follow these steps to request re-delivery of latest information. (Make sure signal is strong and stable.)

Press  ➔ Select **Entertainment** ➔ Press  ➔
Select **CAST** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Get Latest Contents** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

CAST Notif. Setting

Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off

Default Notify

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ➔ CAST ➔ CAST Notif. Setting

Select **Notify or No Response** ➔ Press 

Stored Information

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ➔ CAST

1 Latest Information

1 Select **What's New** and press 

Back Issues

1 Select **History** and press 

2 Select date and press 

2 Select an item and press

Information appears.

3 Press to exit

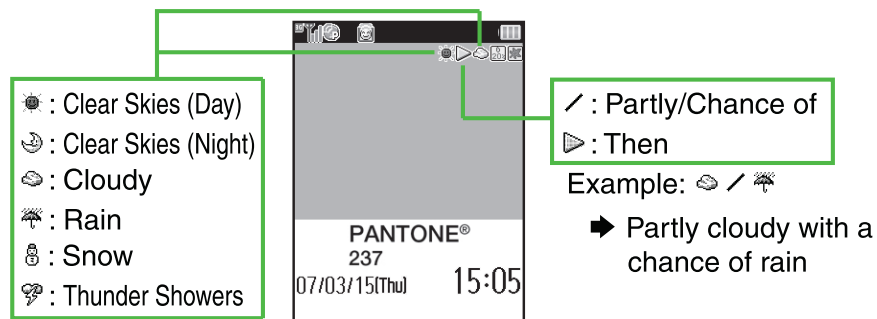
Using Information

Save Sound/ Chaku-Uta®	Select Save ➔ Press 
Change Font Size	Press  Options ➔ Select Font Size ➔ Press  ➔ Select a size ➔ Press 
Change Scroll Unit	Press  Options ➔ Select Scroll Unit ➔ Press  ➔ Select a unit ➔ Press 
Copy Text	Press  Options ➔ Select Copy Text ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/ Cut & Paste" on P.3-13
Open Properties	Press  Options ➔ Select Page Information ➔ Press  ■ Press  to return.

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Cast (see **P.18-2**) registration, local area weather forecast (based on Location Information) appears.

Indicators & Updates



- 🌤️ (chance of rain), 🍁 (fall foliage season), etc. appear at the same time.
- Weather Indicator is updated when:
 - Weather Indicator update time arrives
 - Manually updated

Note ▶ When handset location changes, a new forecast appears at Weather Indicator update time. Alternatively, update Weather Indicator manually.

Activating/Cancelling Weather Indicator

Show or hide Weather Indicator in Standby. **On** (show) is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon ▶ Settings

1 Select **Standby Settings** and press ●

2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ●

Activating Updates

Activate automatic updates. **On** (activate) is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon ▶ Settings

1 Select **Icon Update** and press ●

2 Choose **On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press ● (Omit the next step.)

3 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Weather Indicator is updated when update time arrives.

Display Info

Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off

Default On

Main Menu

► Entertainment ► CAST ► Weather Icon ►
Settings ► Display Info

Choose **On (show)** or **Off** ► Press ●

Manual Update

Update Weather Indicator manually

Main Menu

► Entertainment ► CAST ► Weather Icon

Select **Manual Update** ► Press ●

- Handset connects to the Internet and Weather Indicator is updated.

Note ► Activate **Icon Update** (see P.18-4) beforehand.

Weather Forecast (Japanese Only)

Main Menu

► Entertainment ► CAST ► Weather Icon

1 Select **Weather** and press ●

Information appears.

Electronic Books

Read XPDF or Text format E-Books saved on handset/
Memory Card.

- E-Book dictionaries turn handset into an electronic dictionary.
- Adjust Text Code (see P.18-7) for E-Books in other languages.
- Handset may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- E-Book folder cannot be accessed during Synchronisation.

Downloading E-Books

■ Press ● ► Select **Yahoo! Keitai** ► Press ● ► Select
Yahoo! Keitai ► Press ● ► Select **メニューリスト** ► Press ●
► Select **書籍・コミック・写真集** ► Press ●

- Visit Sharp Space Town (see P.15-9) for more information on E-Books (how to purchase, etc.).

Support Book (Japanese Only)

■ Download Support Book (E-Book on 812SH/813SH
operational tips) via Sharp Space Town (see P.15-9).

Reading Content

Main Menu ► Entertainment

1 Select **E-Book** and press

Book contents list appears. (When you press  to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.)

■ To read E-Books saved in other folders, press  **Options** ► Select **Switch Folders** ► Press  ► Select a folder ► Press 

- Selected item appears next time E-Book is selected.
- Access E-Books saved in **Book** and **Book (SD)** from Entertainment or Data Folder (Books).

2 Select an E-Book and press

- ○% indicates location of the current page.
- If the E-Book is password protected, enter password ► Press  ► Reading window opens
- To see the title, author, etc., press  **Options** ► Select **Details** ► Press 
 - Press  to return.

3 Press to close

- The last page opened will appear next time.

Note ►

- E-Books automatically close for low battery, five minutes of inactivity, or Memory Card removal.
- Only **zbf**, **zbs**, **zbk**, **txt** or **text** files appear in content list.
- Revised E-Books are not supported.

Key Assignments

■ Operations vary by text orientation as follows.

	Horizontal	Vertical
	Scroll up (by line)	Backward (by page)
	Scroll down (by line)	Forward (by page)
	Backward (by page)	Scroll left (by line)
	Forward (by page)	Scroll right (by line)

For some E-Books, use / to scroll by page.

Text Operations

■ Jump to the first or last page.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom** ► Press 

■ Move to a specific location.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Move to Specified %** ► Press 

► Enter location by percentage (00 - 99%) ► Press 

■ Select a chapter when a table of contents is contained.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Contents** ► Press 

Select a chapter ► Press 

■ Move back to link source or open link again.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Back or Next** ► Press 

■ Return to E-Book list.

Press  **Options** ► Select **Back to List** ► Press 

■ See P.18-8 to use Bookmarks.

Using Linked Info/Copying Text

■ Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites.

Select an Item ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press 

- Some linked information may not be usable.

- Copy text (up to 20 characters).

In Reading window, press **Options** ➔ **Select Copy**
➔ **Press** ➔ **Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-14**

- Dictionary index text and search results cannot be copied.
- Images and ruby annotations cannot be copied.

Reading Window Settings

- Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Select an Item** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Change the setting** ➔ **Press**

Item	Description	Default
Font Size	Select <i>Tiny, Small, Standard, Large</i> or <i>Huge</i>	Standard
Text Orientation	Read text vertically or horizontally	Vertical Text*
Ruby	Show/hide ruby annotations	Off
Text Code	Set encoding to <i>Shift-JIS, Latin-1</i> or <i>Latin-9</i>	Shift-JIS
View Settings	Select <i>Detail View</i> or <i>Page View</i>	Detail View
Vibration	Activate/cancel vibration	On
Resolution	Set to <i>Low, Normal</i> or <i>High</i>	Low

*May vary by E-Book.

- Above settings are not available for some content.

Mask & Jump

- Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
 - Select masked info and press to see the text or image. Press again to hide.
 - Select a jump link and press to jump to the specified page. Press to return.

Folders and Files in E-Book Folders

- Open E-Book list first.
 - **Adding Folders**
Press **Options** ➔ **Select New Folder** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Enter name** ➔ **Press**
 - **Editing Folder/File Names**
Select a folder/file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ **Select Change Name** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Edit** ➔ **Press**
 - **Deleting Folders/Files**
Select a folder/file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ **Select Delete** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press**
 - **Moving Files**
Select a file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ **Select Move** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Select a location** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Press**

Tip ➤ The above operations are not available for E-Books in Data Folder (handset/Memory Card). For managing folders/files on handset, see **P.8-8**.

Bookmark

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily.
Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

1 Press

If **Marker** is not on Display, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Bookmark** ➔ Press 

2 Select **Bookmark1** or **Bookmark2** and press

Bookmark is added.

Auto Bookmark

- When Reading window is closed, Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page opened. When the same E-Book is opened and closed again, Auto Bookmark 1 changes to Auto Bookmark 2.
 - Each E-Book holds up to two Auto Bookmarks, the oldest of which is deleted first when a new one is added.

Opening Bookmarked Page

- In Reading window, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Move to Bookmark** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Bookmark1**, **Bookmark2**, **Auto Bookmark1** or **Auto Bookmark2** ➔ Press 

Using E-Book Images

Embedded Information

Save images as Wallpaper or use information contained in images

Main Menu ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ **E-Book** ➔ **Open E-Book**

Select an image ➔ Press

- Soft Key Assignments:

Assign	Save images as Wallpaper For images smaller or larger than Display, select Centred , Full Screen or Fit Image ➔ Press  (For Display size images or Centred , use  to zoom in/out or press  to rotate.)
Jump to	Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send S! Mail messages or access Internet sites (E-Book will close). See P.18-6 "Using Linked Info/Copying Text".
Switch	Hidden text or images appear
Play	Animation plays

Using a Dictionary

Look Up Word

Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Main Menu ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ **E-Book**

Select a dictionary ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry field ➔ Press ➔ Enter a word ➔ Press

- Select an entry and press  to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see **P.18-6**

BookSurfing[®] (Japanese Only)

Activate BookSurfing[®] S! Application to read comics, photo books and other CCF files saved in Data Folder (Books).
To read fee-based CCF files, download Content Keys.

Main Menu ► Entertainment

1 Select **BookSurfing** and press ●

BookSurfing[®] S! Application starts.

- Refer to the BookSurfing[®] help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, **Application suspended.**
End application? appears. Choose **Yes** and press ● to start BookSurfing[®].

Note ► When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files via Memory Card and retrieve Content Key to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Tip ► Save CCF files to handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books).

Communication

S! Town (Japanese Only)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can participate in events and meet other users.

- Usage requires the pre-installed S! Town S! Application.
- S! Town S! Application cannot be deleted.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Using S! Town

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.

Main Menu ▶ *Communication*

1 Select **S! Town** and press ●

S! Town starts.

- Refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu for operational instructions.

Tip ▶

- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu.
- An upgrade notice may appear when starting S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

Save S! Town-compatible S! Applications to S! Town Library.

- Start S! Applications from S! Town Library. (S! Town may start for some applications.)
- S! Town-compatible S! Applications are not saved in S! Town Library by default.

Main Menu ► *Communication*

1 Select **S! Town** and press **Library**

S! Town Library opens.

Tip ► Downloaded S! Town-compatible applications are automatically saved to S! Town Library.

S! Loop (Japanese Only)

S! Loop is a communication service.

Main Menu ► *Communication*

1 Select **S! Loop** and press

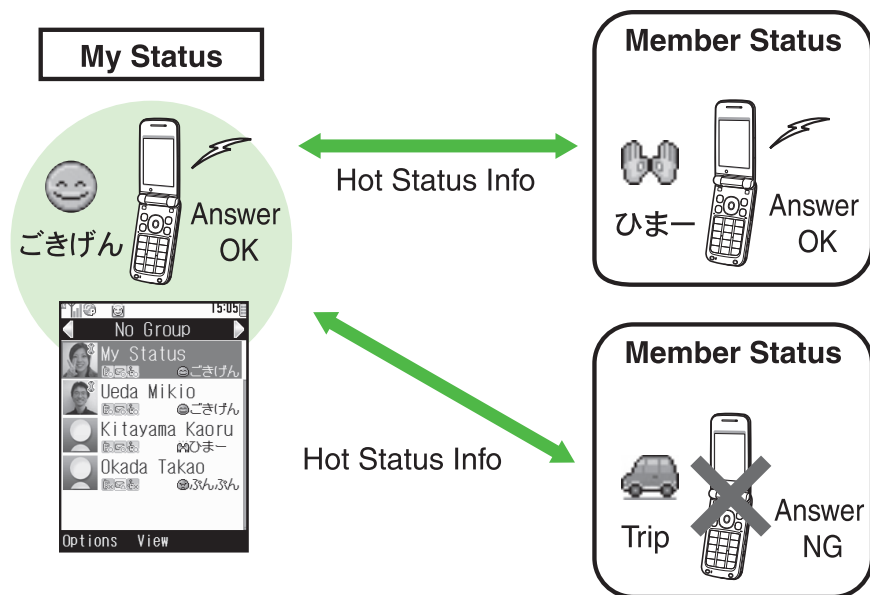
Handset connects to the Internet and S! Loop Main Menu opens.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Hot Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- A separate subscription is required.

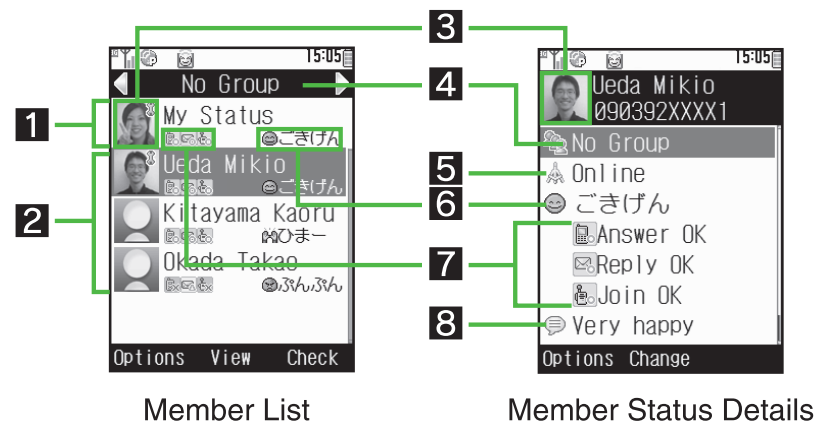


- Save compatible handset numbers to member list. Hot Status information is updated automatically.

Note ▶

- Before use, set IP Service Setting (see **P.9-26**) to **On**.
- Only available on compatible 3G handsets.

Window Description



1 My Status (see P.19-8)

2 Members

3 Image

- Image set for **Picture**: in My Details or Phone Book appears.

4 Group Name

5 Connection Status

- **Online**, **Offline** or **Unknown** appears.

6 Status

- Current status indicated by Status Icon (Pictogram) and Status Label (description) appears.

7 Availability

- Availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk appear.

8 Comment

Hot Status Notification

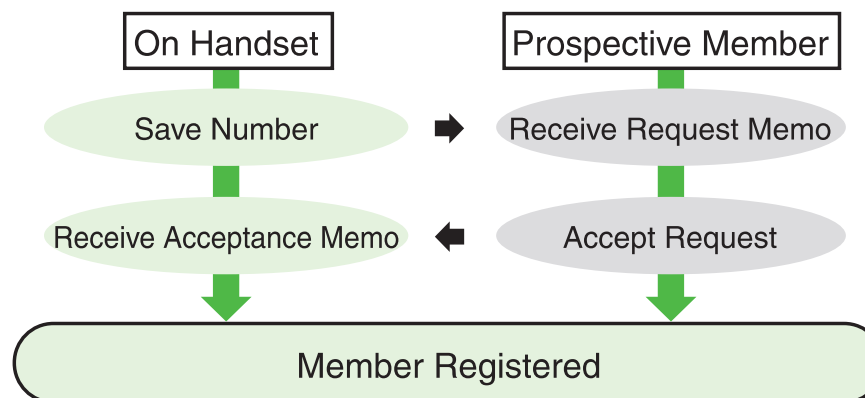
Information window opens for the following notifications.

Request Memo	A request for permission to add your number to Hot Status member list
Acceptance Memo	An acceptance reply to your Request Memo
Abstention Memo	A rejection reply to your Request Memo; also arrives when no reply is sent within two hours
Removal Memo	Your number is deleted from a member's Hot Status member list
NW Interruption	Network failure notice; Hot Status is not available

Adding Members

Save up to 30 members to Hot Status member list.

Overview



My Status is sent and member's Hot Status information appears on handset.

Note ► Set Connection Setting (see **P.19-9**) to **Online** to add members.

Adding from Phone Book or Direct Entry

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

1 Use to select a Group and press Options

■ When **Register a member?** appears, choose **Yes** ►

Press  Skip ahead to Step 3

2 Select **Add Member** and press

3 **Phone Book**

1 Select **Phone Book** and press

2 Select an entry and press

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select one ► Press 

Direct Entry

1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

2 Enter a phone number and press

4 Choose **Yes** and press

Request Memo is sent to the number.

- Member is saved when Request Memo is accepted (Acceptance Memo arrives).
- **Waiting** and **Unknown** appear for pending members' availability and Status respectively.

- Note** ►
- When 30 members are already saved, delete members (see **P.19-10** "Deleting Members") to add new ones.
 - Abstention Memo arrives when Request Memo is sent to incompatible handsets.
 - After sending Request Memo, Bluetooth® and infrared transfers are disabled until Acceptance or Abstention Memo arrives.

- Tip** ► Update My Status (see **P.19-8**) as needed before adding members.

Adding from Request Memo

Save members via Request Memo.

When a request arrives, **Accept the registration request from XX** (name/number) ? appears. Accept or reject it.

1 Accepting

1 Choose Yes and press

Acceptance Memo is sent and the number is saved to Hot Status member list.

Rejecting

1 Choose No and press

Abstention Memo is sent; number is not saved to Hot Status member list.

Auto Reject

■ Abstention Memo is sent automatically when:

- Handset fails to respond within two hours
- Thirty members are already saved in total

- Note** ►
- Once rejected, the same number cannot be added to member list for 24 hours.
 - Request Memo arrives again when the requesting party fails to receive Abstention Memo within 24 hours.

Opening Member Status Details

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

1 Use  to select a Group, then  to select a member

2 Press 

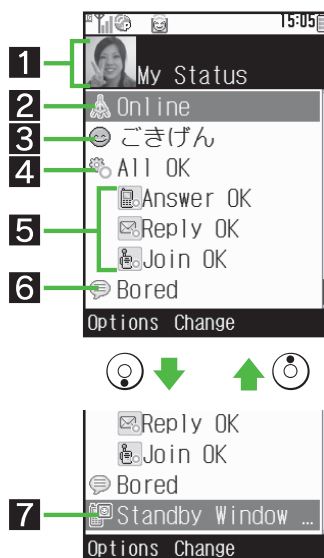
Member status details appear.

■ Window Description: see P.19-4

My Status

Opening My Status Details

1 In Standby, press for 1+ seconds



1 Image/Name

- Image and name appear if saved in My Details.

2 Connection Status (see P.19-9)

3 Status

- To edit Status Icon/Label, see P.19-12 "Status Setting".

4 Answer Status

- Change availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk at once.

5 Availability

- Set availability for Calls, Mail and Circle Talk separately.

6 Comment

- Enter up to 15 characters.

7 Standby Window On/Off (see P.19-9)

Default Settings

Item	Default
Status	ごきげん
Answer Status	All OK
Availability (Calls)	Answer OK
Availability (Mail)	Reply OK
Availability (Circle Talk)	Join OK
Comment	—

Changing My Status

Follow these steps after opening My Status details (Step 1 on the left) to change Status, availability and Comment. For other items, see P.19-9.

1 Select an item (except Connection status and Standby Window On/Off) and press

2 Select status and press

- To change more items, repeat Steps 1 - 2.
- For Comment, enter text ➡ Press

3 Press **Update**

New status is sent to the members.

For Comment, enter text ➡ Press ➡ Choose **No** ➡ Press

- Available Settings:

Item	Setting	
Status	16 Status Icon/Label combinations	
Answer Status	All OK	Calls: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK Circle Talk: Join OK
	Only Mail is OK	Calls: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK Circle Talk: Join NG
	All NG	Calls: Answer NG Mail: Check Later Circle Talk: Join NG
	User Setting	- (See P.19-11 "Answer Status" to assign custom combination)
Calls	Answer OK, Urgency Only or Answer NG	
Mail	Reply OK or Check Later	
Circle Talk	Join OK, Auto Join ¹ or Join NG ²	
Comment	Up to 15 characters	

¹Automatically accepts Circle Talk requests.

²Automatically rejects Circle Talk requests.

■ Additional Settings

Follow these steps after opening My Status details (Step 1 on P.19-8).

Connection Setting

Set Connection status

Select current Connection status (*Online* or *Offline*)

➡ Press ● ➡ **Select *Online* or *Offline*** ➡ Press ●

- Set to ***Online*** to change Status/availability or to use Circle Talk.

Standby Window

Show or hide My Status in Standby Window

Default On

Select current Standby Window status (*Standby Window On* or *Off*) ➡ Press ● ➡ **Choose *On* (show) or *Off*** ➡ Press ●

Connection Status Auto Update

- Connection status is updated to ***Unknown*** or ***Offline*** after a period of no signal detection.
- Connection status is updated to ***Online*** when signal returns.

Editing Hot Status Member List

Edit Group name or move members to other Groups.

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1** Use  to select a Group and press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Edit Group Name* and press 
- 3** Enter name and press 

Moving Members

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1** Select a member and press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Change Group* and press 
- 3** Select target Group and press 

Member is moved.

Tip ► Open Standby Window in Communication mode (see **P.9-8**) to view member Status/availability in Standby.

Deleting Members

Deleting a member simultaneously deletes your number from the deleted member's Hot Status member list.

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1** Select a member and press 
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select *Registration Release* and press 
- 4** Choose *Yes* and press 
- 5** Choose *Yes* and press 

Removal Memo is sent and the member is deleted from Hot Status member list.

Note ►

- Deleted members cannot be re-saved for 24 hours.
- Request Memo arrives when the member fails to receive Removal Memo within 24 hours.

When Abstention/Removal Memo Arrives

- Member is deleted from Hot Status member list.
 - When handset fails to receive Abstention/Removal Memo within 24 hours, Request Memo is sent to the member.

Using Hot Status Info

Use Hot Status to place calls, send messages, start Circle Talk or save numbers to Phone Book.

Calls, Messages & Circle Talk

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1 Select a member and press **Options**
- 2 Select a contact method and press
For **Call** and **Video Call**, handset dials the number.
 Creating & Sending SMS/S! Mail: see **P.14-6**
 Initiating Circle Talk: see **P.19-14 - 19-15**

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1 Select a member and press **Options**
- 2 Select **Save to Phone Book** and press
- 3 Select **As New Entry** or an existing entry and press
Number is entered in Phone Book. Complete other fields and save (see **P.4-4**).

Hot Status Settings

Request Reply Select handset response to Request Memos

Default Always Confirmed

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

Press **Options** ► **Select Settings** ► Press ► **Select Request Reply** ► Press ► **Select an option** ► Press

Always Confirmed	Show confirmation for all Request Memos
Unregistered Entry	Reject Request Memos from numbers not saved in Phone Book; otherwise, confirmation appears
Always Ignored	Reject all Request Memos

Answer Status Assign custom availability combination to User Setting (see **P.19-9**)

Default Calls: Answer OK, Mail: Reply OK, Circle Talk: Join OK

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

Press **Options** ► **Select Settings** ► Press ► **Select Answer Status** ► Press ► **Select User Setting** ► Press ► **Select a type** ► Press ► **Select availability** ► Press

When finished setting for all types, press **Save**.

Status Setting

Change Status Icon Pictogram or edit Status Label description for My Status

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

Press  **Options** ► **Select Settings** ► Press  ► **Select Status Setting** ► Press  ► **Select a Status** ► Press  ► **Select Status Icon** ► Press  ► **Select a Pictogram** ► Press  ► **Select Status Label** ► Press  ► **Enter text** ► Press 

 Press  **Save** to save.

- Pictogram List: see **P.20-16**
- Enter up to four characters for Status Label.

Additional Functions

Opening Hot Status Notification List

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Hot Status Notification List** and press 

Hot Status Notification List appears.

-  To open details, select a notification ► Press 
 - For Request Memos, see **P.19-7** "Adding from Request Memo".

Manual Info Update

Normally Hot Status information is updated automatically. Follow these steps for manual update.

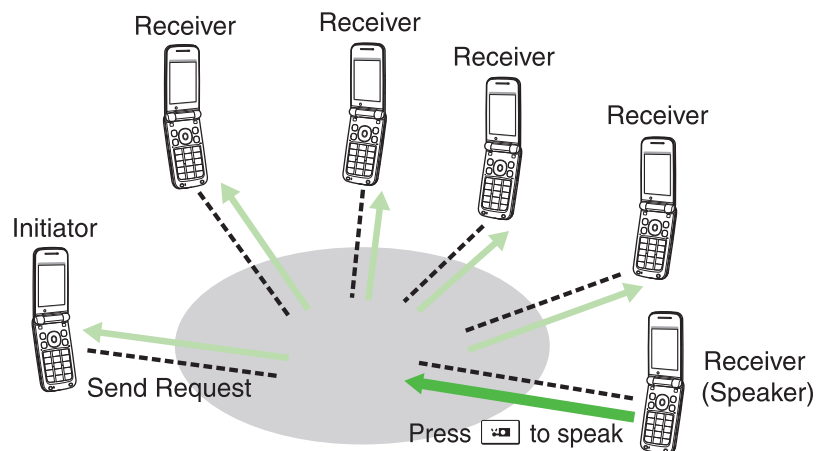
Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Press  **Options**
 - 2 Select **Settings** and press 
 - 3 Select **Status Update** and press 
- Hot Status information is updated.

Circle Talk

Circle Talk is a Walkie-Talkie type communication service. Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously.

- Press  to take the floor and speak; other participants may only listen until the floor is released.
- A subscription to Hot Status is required.
- Transmission/connection fees apply during Circle Talk.



- Note** ►
- Before use, set IP Service Setting (see **P.9-26**) to **On** and Connection Setting (see **P.19-9**) to **Online**. (Circle Talk is disabled when Connection Setting is **Offline**.)
 - A new Circle Talk session cannot begin during a call.
 - Only available on compatible 3G handsets.

Window Description



1 Total Number of Participants

2 Participants

Names appear if saved in Phone Book. Otherwise phone numbers appear.

3 Connection Status

4 Circle Talk Status

Initiating Circle Talk

Follow the steps below to start Circle Talk from Standby. When **Register the circle talk member right now?** appears, see **P.19-17** to create Circle Talk member list.

1 Enter a phone number

2 Press (Circle Talk Key)

 Adding/Cancelling Participants: see **P.19-16**

3 Press **Call**

- Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.

4 Speak

Initiator is the first speaker when Circle Talk starts.

- Speaker's voice is heard by all other participants.
- Speak for up to 30 seconds at one time.
- Warning tone sounds five seconds before limit.

5 Press when finished

- The floor is released automatically when the time is up.

6 To speak again, press while **Press to speak** appears

Press  when finish appears when you have the floor.

- **Busy** appears if the floor is taken by another participant; try again later.

7 Press to exit

- Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining Circle Talk

- In Standby, press / to open **Dialled Numbers/Received Calls** ➔ **Select the most recent Circle Talk record** ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Rejoin Circle Talk** ➔ Press 
 - An error message appears when all other participants have exited or 11 participants are already engaged.

Loudspeaker On/Off

- Press  to toggle Loudspeaker on/off during Circle Talk.
 - To activate/cancel Loudspeaker when starting Circle Talk, see **P.19-18** "Loudspeaker".

Note ► Incoming Calls/Alarm during Circle Talk

- Handset responds to incoming calls according to **Incoming Calls** settings (see **P.19-18**).
- Alarm Times are announced after exiting Circle Talk.

From Circle Talk Member List

Save members or Groups beforehand (see **P.19-17**).

- 1 Press 
- 2 Select a member or Group and press 
 Adding/Cancelling Participants: see **P.19-16**
- 3 Press  **Call**



From Hot Status Member List

Main Menu ► *Communication* ► *Hot Status*

- 1 Use  to select a member and press 
 Adding/Cancelling Participants: see **P.19-16**

- 2 Press  **Call**

From Phone Book or Call Log

- 1 **Phone Book**

- 1 Press 

- 2 Select an entry and press 

Call Log

- 1 Use  to open Dialed Numbers/Received Calls

- 2 Select a number and press 

 Adding/Cancelling Participants: see **P.19-16**

- 3 Press  **Call**

Accepting a Circle Talk Request

- 1 While handset is ringing/
vibrating, press ,  or 

Circle Talk starts.

■ To take the floor, see P.19-14.

- 2 Press  to exit



Note ► To always accept Circle Talk requests automatically, set Circle Talk availability (see P.19-8) to **Auto Join**. If **Join NG** is set, Circle Talk requests are always rejected.

Adding/Cancelling Participants

Adding Participants

Follow these steps before starting Circle Talk or during Circle Talk.

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Add Member** and press 

3 From Hot Status Member List

- 1 Select **Members List** and press 
- 2 Use  to select a Group, then select a member

From Circle Talk Member List

- 1 Select **C/T Members List** and press 
- 2 Select a member or Group

From Phone Book

- 1 Select **Phone Book** and press 
- 2 Select an entry

■ For entries with multiple numbers, press  ➔ Select one

Direct Entry

- 1 Select **Enter Phone Number** and press 
- 2 Enter a phone number

4 Press

Selected member, Group or number is added.

- To add more participants, repeat Steps 1 - 4.

Cancelling Participants

Follow these steps before starting Circle Talk.
Participants cannot be cancelled during Circle Talk.

- 1** Select a member and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Delete Member** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 

Creating Circle Talk Member List

Save members from Hot Status member list or Phone Book to create Circle Talk member list.

- Save members as individuals or Groups.
- Save up to 30 entries in total (up to ten members per Group).

- 1** Press 
- 2** Select **Add New Entry** and press 
 -  When opening Circle Talk member list for the first time, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

3 Saving as Individuals

- 1** Select **Individual** and press 
- 2** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press 
- 3** Select an entry and press 

The entry is saved as a member.

 For entries with multiple numbers, select one ➔ Press 

Saving as Groups

- 1** Select **Group** and press 
- 2** Press 
- 3** Enter name and press 
- 4** Select from **No.1:** to **No.10:** and press 
- 5** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press 
- 6** Select an entry and press 
-  For entries with multiple numbers, select one ➔ Press 
- 7** Repeat Steps **4** - **6** to add members
- 8** Press  **Save**

Tip ➔ To change Group names or saved members, see **P.19-18** "Editing Circle Talk Member List".

Editing Circle Talk Member List

Edit or delete members and Groups.

Editing Members or Groups

- 1 Press
- 2 **Individual Members**
 - 1 Select a member and press **Options**
 - 2 Select **Edit** and press
 - 3 Press
 - 4 Perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Saving as Individuals" on P.19-17
- Groups**
 - 1 Select a Group and press **Options**
 - 2 Select **Edit** and press
 - 3 Perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Saving as Groups" on P.19-17

Deleting Members or Groups

- 1 Press
- 2 Select a member or Group and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Delete** and press
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press

Circle Talk Settings

Loudspeaker

Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Circle Talk

Default On

Press ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Loudspeaker**
➔ Press ➔ Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

Incoming Calls

Set response to calls received during Circle Talk

Default Voice Calls/Video Calls: Reject Calls

Press ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Incoming Calls** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Voice Calls or Video Calls**
➔ Press ➔ Select handset response ➔ Press

Accept Calls	Incoming calls interrupt Circle Talk sessions
Reject Calls	Incoming calls are ignored. (Caller hears a busy tone.)

Near Chat (Japanese Only)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (see **P.16-8**) that may be used to reset the application password.
- For more about password restriction, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.
- Because Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology, users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources. To reject such requests, choose **No** and press ● in Step 2 on **P.19-20** "Receiving Near Chat Request".

Basics

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres.

- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires the pre-installed Near Chat S! Application.

- Note** ►
- Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.
 - Near Chat S! Application cannot be deleted.

Using Near Chat

Setup

Activate the following Bluetooth® settings beforehand.

Bluetooth®	See P.10-2 (choose On)
Visibility	See P.10-4 (select Show My Phone)
S! Appli Request	See P.19-20 (choose On)

- Note** ►
- Always activate Bluetooth® to use Near Chat.
 - When Bluetooth® is active and Visibility is set to **Show My Phone**, handset may receive unsolicited connection requests from other Bluetooth® devices.
 - Set Visibility to **Show My Phone** and activate S! Appli Request to receive Near Chat request from other parties.

- Tip** ►
- Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth® and sets Visibility to **Show My Phone**. Bluetooth® remains active even after ending Near Chat but Visibility returns to its previous state.

■ S! Appli Request

S! Appli Request is **On** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (📶) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ●

■ For **On**, if **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●

■ Sending Near Chat Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select **Near chat** and press ●

■ If **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●

2 Send Near Chat request via the application

- Near Chat starts when the other party accepts your request.

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.16-4)

■ Receiving Near Chat Request

1 When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and **Bluetooth® Notification** appears

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, the tone sounds again, notification appears and Information window opens.
- Check request log in Latest Information (see below).



2 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Near Chat S! Application starts.

- For details, read the instructions on the application.
- To reject request, choose **No** ▶ Press ●

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.16-4)

Latest Information Open details of the most recently received Near Chat request

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (📶) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request

Select **Latest Information** ▶ Press ●

■ Press ● to return.

Appendix

Function List

For SoftBank 813SH Function List, see **SoftBank 813SH Supplementary Guide**.

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Communication	S! Town	P.19-2
	S! Loop	P.19-3
	Hot Status	P.19-4
	Circle Talk	P.19-13
	Near chat	P.19-19
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-3
	Bookmarks	P.15-9
	Saved Pages	P.15-9
	Enter URL	P.15-4
	History	P.15-4
	Live Monitor	P.15-14
	PC Site Browser	P.15-18
	Common Settings	P.15-20
Media Player	Music	P.7-6
	Videos	P.7-8
	Streaming	P.15-12
Messaging	Received Msg.	P.14-23
	Create Message	P.14-7
	Retrieve New Msg.	P.14-19
	Drafts	P.14-18
	Templates	P.14-14
	Sent Messages	P.14-23
	Unsent Messages	P.14-23
	Server Mail Box	P.14-22
	Create New SMS	P.14-6
	Settings	P.14-33
	Memory Status	P.14-3

Main Menu		Sub Menu	Refer to
Camera		-	P.6-2
Data Folder		Pictures	P.8-2
		DCIM	P.8-2
		My Pictograms	P.8-2
		Ring Song·Tones	P.8-2
		S! Appli	P.16-2
		Music	P.8-2
		Videos	P.8-2
		Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2
		Books	P.8-2
		Custom Screens	P.9-9
		Flash®	P.8-2
		Flash® Ringtones	P.8-2
		Other Documents	P.8-2
		Memory Status	P.8-2
Tools	Tools 1	Calendar	P.12-2
		Alarms	P.12-11
		Calculator	P.12-15
		Tasks	P.12-8
		World Clock	P.12-14
	Tools 2	Voice Recorder	P.12-16
		Document Viewer	P.12-18
		Stopwatch	P.12-24
		Countdown Timer	P.12-25
	Tools 3	Expenses Memo	P.12-25
		Text Templates	P.12-26
		Barcode	P.12-19
		Phone Help	P.12-27

Main Menu		Sub Menu	Refer to
Entertainment		BookSurfing	P.18-9
		E-Book	P.18-5
		CAST	P.18-2
S! Appli		S! Appli	P.16-2
		Settings	P.16-7
		Information	P.16-2
Lifestyle-appli		Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2
		IC Card Settings	P.17-4
Phone		Phone Book List	P.4-2
		Add New Entry	P.4-4
		Information	P.2-7
		Call Log	P.2-13
		Play Messages	P.2-10
		Call Voicemail	P.13-4
		Category Control	P.4-11
		My Details	P.4-19
		Speed Dial List	P.4-13
		Contact Groups	P.4-12
		S! Address Book	P.4-15
		Ph.Book Settings	P.4-9
		Manage Entries	P.4-8
Settings	Phone Settings	Mode Settings	P.9-2
		Display	P.9-3
		Custom Screens	P.9-9
		Sounds & Alerts	P.9-14
		Date & Time	P.9-18
		言語選択 (Language)	P.9-9
		User Dictionary	P.9-19
		Ringer Output	P.9-17
		Earpiece Volume	P.9-17
		Simple Menu	P.2-21
		Locks	P.9-20
		Software Update	P.20-8
		Master Reset	P.9-28

Main Menu		Sub Menu	Refer to
Settings	Connectivity	Bluetooth	P.10-2
		Infrared	P.10-10
		Mass Storage	P.11-9
		Memory Card	P.11-2
	Call/Video Call	Call Time & Cost	P.2-14
		Answer Phone	P.2-9
		Voicemail/Divert	P.13-2
		Video Call	P.5-6
		Show My Number	P.13-10
		out Missed Calls	P.13-5
		Int'l Calling	P.9-29
		Disp. Time/Call	P.9-30
		Call Barring	P.13-7
		Minute Minder	P.9-30
		Auto Answer	P.9-30
		Call Waiting	P.13-5
	Network Settings	Select Network	P.10-14
		Select Service	P.2-16
		Offline Mode	P.2-20
		Retrieve NW Info	P.10-15
		Location Info	P.10-15
		Network Info	P.10-15

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	- Was  pressed and held long enough? - Battery may need to be charged or replaced. - Battery may not be properly installed.	- Press and hold  longer. - Charge battery or install a charged battery. - Install battery properly.
Handset won't respond	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On?	If On, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see P.9-24.
Insert USIM Card appears in Standby and handset is unresponsive	- USIM Card may not be properly inserted. - The correct USIM Card may not be inserted. - There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	- Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged. - Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid. - Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
Keypad won't respond	- Keypad Lock (see P.1-22) may be active. - Password Lock (see P.9-25) may be active.	- Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.1-22). - Cancel Password Lock (see P.9-25).
Cannot place call from Phone Book	- The number may be saved as Secret entry. - Phone Book Lock may be active.	- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-27). - Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.9-26).
 appears in Standby and call won't connect	- Handset may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range. - Is GSM selected in Select Service (see P.2-16)?	- Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. - Select another mode according to service area.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	• Did you include the dialling code or the first 0? • Handset may be out-of-range. (out appears) • Handset Offline Mode (see P.2-20) may be active.	• Dial the number including the dialling code or 0. • Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Cancel Offline Mode (see P.2-20).
Call is choppy or cut off	• Network signal may be weak. • Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Line is noisy during calls	• Network signal may be weak or unstable.	—
Battery won't charge	• AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset or Desktop Holder. • AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to outlet. • Battery may not be properly installed. • Handset may not be properly inserted into Desktop Holder. • There may be debris on: terminals (handset, battery or Desktop Holder); connector (AC Charger); Connection Port (Desktop Holder); External Device Port. • Battery may not charge outside 5°C to 35°C. • Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.	• Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again. • Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again. • Open handset, install battery properly and try again. • Remove handset and re-insert correctly. • Clean terminals, connector and Port with a cotton swab and try again. • Charge within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. • Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges quickly	• Remaining charge shortens charging time. • Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.	— • Replace battery with a new one.
Handset/Charger/Desktop Holder feels warm	• During charging, AC Charger or Desktop Holder normally becomes warm; handset may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use.	• Unless handset/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (see P.xviii).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time.	For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see P.1-13 - 1-14.
Display flickers	Display may flicker under fluorescent lights.	—
Display went dark	Leaving handset open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction.	Press any key to reactivate Display Backlight.

Tip ► For repairs and after-sales services, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.20-29**).

Warning Signs

out appears

Handset is out-of-range.
Move for a better signal.

Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (see **P.1-15**).
Charge or replace battery immediately.

appears

Keypad Lock is active (see **P.1-22**).
Cancel to use Keypad. Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**) to answer calls.

appears

Password Lock is active (see **P.9-25**).
Cancel to place calls, etc.
Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**) to answer calls.

S! Application Display Messages

Message	Cause & Solution
Application suspended. End application? Application is suspended.	- An S! Application is paused. ↓ - Close application and try again.
○○ Download to Phone Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download? Battery low. Download may not be completed.	- Download may fail due to low battery. ↓ - Charge battery then try again.
○○ Not Enough Memory in Phone. Download to Memory Card Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download?	- Memory is full. ↓ - Press  to download or  to cancel.

Message	Cause & Solution
Exceeds limit. Cannot save.	• 100 S! Applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.) ↓ • Delete applications (see P.16-5) and try again.
Same version found Continue download?	• The same version of selected S! Application is already saved. ↓ • Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press .
New version found Continue download?	• An older version of the same S! Application is saved. ↓ • Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press .

Tip ► If one of these messages appears, S! Application cannot be downloaded:

- *Improper data. Cannot download application.*
- *Size too large. Cannot receive.*

Messaging Mishaps

■ When S! Mail is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**).

- **Recipient is not subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not S! Mail-compatible.**
 - The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
 - Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG (see **P.8-16**), then attach and send.

■ When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (✉ appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved at the Centre.

- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see **P.14-29**). When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see **P.14-36**).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

Before updating software, turn power off to end all active functions/applications, then restart handset.

- Choose to begin update or schedule update.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading and rewriting).
- Keep handset in a place where signal is strong and stable.
- Charge battery (🔋 appears) beforehand; a low battery may cause update to fail.
- Do not remove battery during update; update may fail.
- To reduce risk of failure, disconnect USB Cable from handset beforehand.

Updating Software

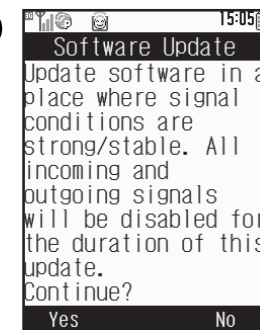
Read Software Update Precautions (left) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** (⊕) ▶ **Software Update**

1 Select **Software Update** and press (⊕)

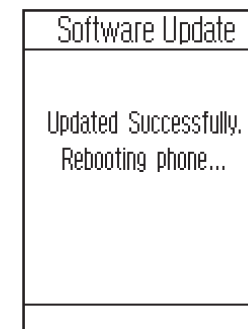
Confirmation appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. (🔋 appears during update.)
- Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.



Confirmation

- Confirmation appears for successful update then handset restarts. Completion message appears and Information window opens (ℹ appears).
 - While completion message appears, press (⊕) to acknowledge update completion and cancel Information window.



Update Complete

Note ► Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.20-29**).



Update Failure

Update Result

- While Information window appears, select **Update Result** ► Press ●
 - Press ● again to exit.
- In Standby, press ● ► Select **Settings** ► Press ● ► Use ● to select **Phone Settings** ► Select **Software Update** ► Press ● ► Select **Update Result** ► Press ●
 - Press ● again to return.



Update Result

Scheduled Update

- Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ● or wait approximately ten seconds for update to start.
 - Update will not start while handset is in use. When the current operation ends, confirmation appears. After ten minutes, scheduled update is automatically cancelled.
 - Update automatically cancels Keypad Lock.



Confirmation

- Note** ►
- Handset Phone Book entries, media files, and other content are not affected by firmware updates, but users should always back up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.
 - If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart handset.

Character Code List

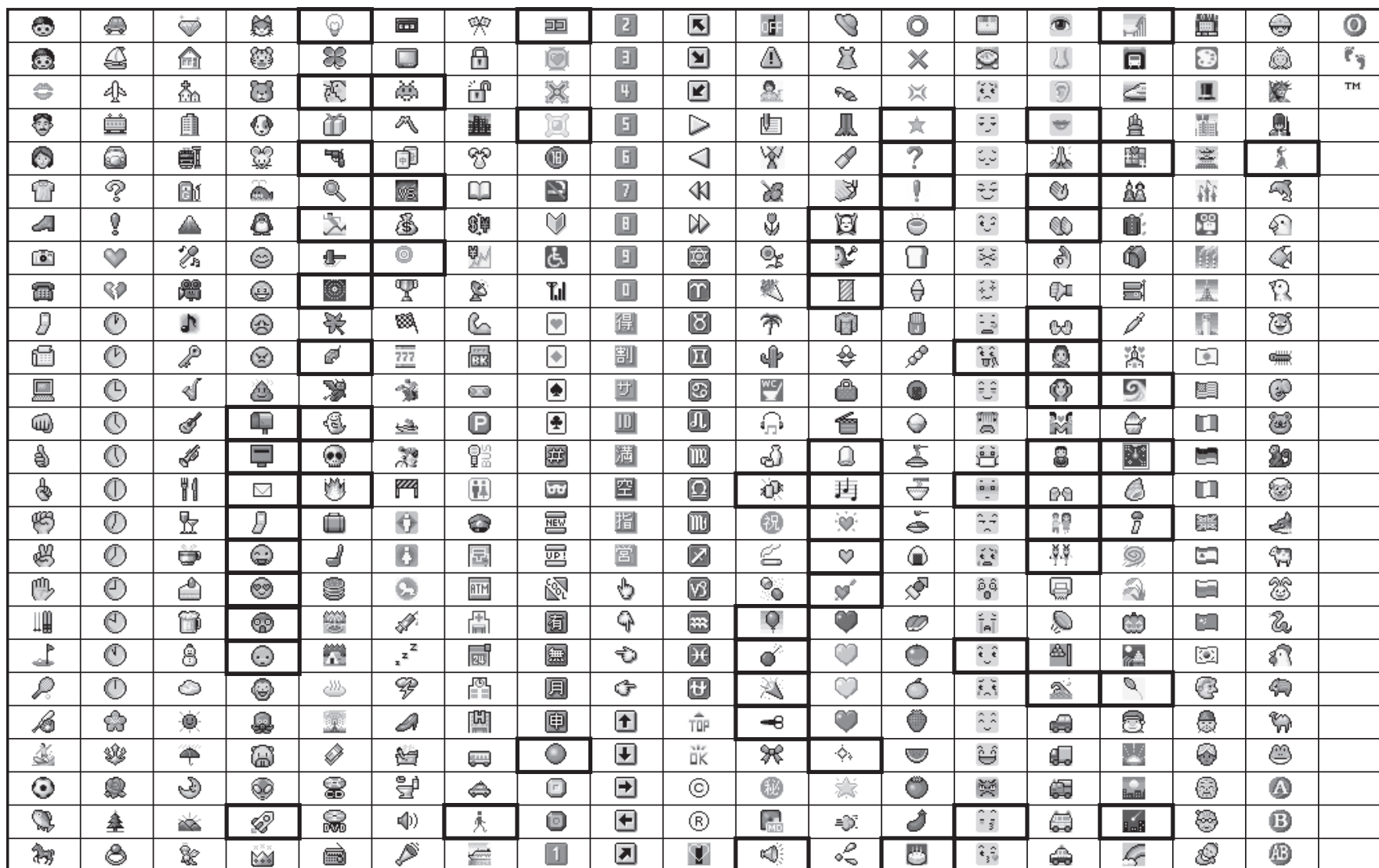
First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	(Space)	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	047	ゆ	よ	よ	らん	り	る	れ	ろ	わ	わ	161	葵	茜	穉	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯨	188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
011	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	048	ゐ	ゑ	を								162	梓	压	乾	扱	宛	姐	虻	鉛	絢	189	恢	懷	戒	拐	改	灰	界	皆	絵	芥	
012	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	050											163																					
013	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	051	オ	ア	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	オ		164	鮎	或																			
014	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	052	オ	ア	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	オ		192																					
015	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	053	オ	ア	イ	イ	ウ	ウ	エ	エ	オ		193																					
016	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	054	ゴ	サ	シ	シ	ス	ス	セ	セ	ソ		194																					
017	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	055	ゾ	タ	チ	チ	ツ	ツ	テ	テ	パ		195																					
018	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	056	ト	ビ	ニ	ニ	ブ	ブ	ハ	ハ	ペ		196																					
019	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	057	ヒ	ポ	ミ	ミ	ム	ム	レ	レ	ヤ		167																					
020	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	058	ユ	ヨ	ヨ	ラン	ル	ル	カ	カ	ワ		168																					
021	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ											169																						
022	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	060										170																						
023	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	061	ク	ハ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	171																						
024	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	062	ク	ハ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	172																						
026	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	063	ク	ハ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	173																						
027	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	064	ク	ハ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	174																						
028	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	065	ク	ハ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	フ	175																						
029	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	070										176																						
031											071	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	177																						
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	072	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	178																						
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G	073	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	イ	178																						
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	074										179																						
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z		075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	180																						
036				a	b	c	d	e			076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	181																						
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	182																						
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	078	ю	я																														
039	z										080										182																						
040	あ	あ	い	い	う	う	え	え	お		081										183																						
041	か	か	き	き	く	く	け	け			082										184																						
042	さ	さ	し	し	す	す	せ	せ			083										185																						
043	た	た	ち	ち	つ	つ	て	て													186																						
044	な	な	に	に	ぬ	ぬ	ね	ね													187																						
045	び	び	ふ	ふ	ぶ	ぶ	べ	べ																																			
046	ぽ	ぽ	ま	ま	め	め	め	め			160																																

20-12

20-14

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit												
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
797	閻	闕	閏	潤	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	837	毚	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯	鼯																							
798	關	闡	闢	闢	闢	闢	闢	闢	闢	838	齒	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧																							
799	陌	陌	陌	陌	陌	陌	陌	陌	陌	839	齒	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧	齧																							
800		陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	840																																	
801	險	隧	隱	隱	隱	隱	隱	隱	隱																																		
802	雋	雋	雋	雋	雋	雋	雋	雋	雋																																		
803	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈																																		
804	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈	霈																																		
805	飽	飽	飽	飽	飽	飽	飽	飽	飽																																		
806	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅																																		
807	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅	鞅																																		
808	韶	韶	韶	韶	韶	韶	韶	韶	韶																																		
809	顏	顏	顏	顏	顏	顏	顏	顏	顏																																		
810		顛	顛	顛	顛	顛	顛	顛	顛																																		
811	飆	飆	飆	飆	飆	飆	飆	飆	飆																																		
812	餞	餞	餞	餞	餞	餞	餞	餞	餞																																		
813	饒	饒	饒	饒	饒	饒	饒	饒	饒																																		
814	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮																																		
815	駟	駟	駟	駟	駟	駟	駟	駟	駟																																		
816	驅	驅	驅	驅	驅	驅	驅	驅	驅																																		
817	驢	驢	驢	驢	驢	驢	驢	驢	驢																																		
818	體	體	體	體	體	體	體	體	體																																		
819	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻																																		
820		鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚																																		
821	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏																																		
822	魴	魴	魴	魴	魴	魴	魴	魴	魴																																		
823	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓																																		
824	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓																																		
825	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓																																		
826	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓																																		
827	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓	鮓																																		
828	缺	缺	缺	缺	缺	缺	缺	缺	缺																																		
829	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩	鳩																																		
830		鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠																																		
831	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠																																		
832	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠																																		
833	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠	鵠																																		
834	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋																																		
835	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋	麋																																		
836	黠	黠	黠	黠	黠	黠	黠	黠	黠																																		

Pictogram List



Note ► Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Tip ► Pictograms in are animated.

Specifications

■ SoftBank 812SH

Weight	Approximately 105 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 150 minutes (3G) Approximately 240 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 330 hours (3G) Approximately 320 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 80 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 150 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 150 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 97 x 17.6 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.

■ SoftBank 813SH

Weight	Approximately 104 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 150 minutes (3G) Approximately 240 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 330 hours (3G) Approximately 320 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	-
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 150 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 150 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 97 x 17.6 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when an S! Application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with handset use in poor signal conditions (see **P.1-13** "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ AC Charger

Power Source	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	12VA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.2V/650 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 55 x 45 x 22 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5m

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	820 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 44.5 x 4.5 x 33.7 mm (without protruding parts)

Memory List

Messaging	
Received Msg.	Approximately 5 MB or 1,000 messages
Drafts	Approximately 3 MB ¹
Sent Messages	Approximately 3 MB or 500 messages ¹
Unsent Messages	Approximately 3 MB ¹
Templates	Approximately 64 MB ²

¹Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages share memory.

²Shared with S! Appli Library and Data Folder.

S! Applications	
S! Appli	Approximately 64 MB* (100 items) on handset

*Shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder.

Data Folder	
Data Folder	Approximately 64 MB*

*Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library.

Index

Number

3D Pictogram	14-24
3D Pictogram Settings	14-24
3G.....	2-16

A

AC Charger.....	1-17
Accept Calls (S! Applications)	16-8
Access WEB Link	7-7
Acquire Dictionary	9-19
Activation Time (S! Applications)	16-6
Add Date.....	11-8
Add Email Address.....	4-3
Add Frame (Photo Camera).....	6-13
Add Member.....	19-6
Alarm Settings	12-3
Alarm Volume.....	12-13
Alarms	12-11
Alarms (cancelling/reactivating)...	12-14
All Calls	2-13
Alternative Image (Video Call).....	5-6
Answer Phone.....	2-9
Answer Phone (Manner mode).....	9-2
Answer Status.....	19-11
Anti Spam Measures	14-35
Any Key Answer	2-6, 9-2
Application Volume (S! Applications)	16-7
Arrange Mail.....	14-11

Assign Ringtone (by Phone Book Category)....	4-12
Assign Tone/Video	12-5, 12-9, 12-13
Assign Tone/Videos (by Phone Book entry)....	4-5
Attach File	14-10
Auth Info.....	15-21
Authentication	15-5
Authorisation Code	10-3, 10-10
Auto (Network Settings).....	2-16
Auto Add Code	9-29
Auto Answer	9-30
Auto Bookmark (E-Book).....	18-8
Auto Delete	14-36
Auto Play File.....	14-38
Auto Resend (Messaging)	14-34
Auto Save (mobile camera)	6-18

B

Background Colour	7-14
Backlight (Display/Keypad)	9-13
Backlight (S! Applications).....	16-7
Backlight (Video Call)	5-7
Backlight (Video Player)	7-10
Backup	11-6
Barcode (opening).....	12-21
Battery	1-12, 1-16
Battery Strength	1-14, 1-15
Blink (S! Applications).....	16-8
Blink (subtitles)	7-15
Bluetooth Timeout.....	10-9

Bluetooth®	10-2
Bookmarks.....	15-9, 15-10
Bookmarks (editing)	15-10
BookSurfing®	8-7, 18-9
Brightness (Backlight).....	9-13
By a-ka-sa-ta-na (Phone Book).....	4-9
By Category (Phone Book).....	4-9
By Reading (Phone Book)	4-9

C

Cache	15-21
Cache Memory.....	15-2
Calculator.....	12-15
Calendar (schedule).....	12-2
Calendar (Standby)	9-5
Calendar Format.....	9-19
Call Barring.....	13-7
Call Costs.....	2-15
Call Forwarding	13-2
Call Settings	9-29
Call Time Counter	9-30
Call Timers.....	2-14
Call Voicemail	13-4
Call Waiting.....	13-5
Caller Display (External Display).....	9-14
Caller ID (sending/blocking) ...	2-2, 13-10
Calls & Alarms (S! Applications).....	16-8
Calls (ending)	2-2
Calls (placing).....	2-2, 5-3

Camera Picture (Video Call)	5-4, 5-6
Category Control (Phone Book) ...	4-11, 4-12
Centre Access Code	1-27
Change List View (Data Folder)	8-4
Change NW Password.....	13-10
Change PIN	9-25
Change to Bcc	14-9
Change to Cc	14-9
Change to To.....	14-9
Character Code List	20-10
Character Codes (entering)	3-9
Character entry modes	3-2
Char-code (Internet)	15-20
Char-code (Messaging).....	14-37
Charging time	1-12, 1-17, 1-18, 1-19
Check Settings.....	11-8
Chng Handset Code	9-28
Circle Talk.....	19-13
Circle Talk (System Sounds)	9-16
Circle Talk member list....	19-15, 19-17, 19-18
Clear All (Speed Dial)	4-14
Clear Costs	2-15
Clear Counter.....	2-14
Clock Type (External Display)	9-13
Clock/Calendar	9-5
Conductor Setting (Face Recognition)	9-23
Conference Call	13-6
Connection Setting	19-9
Contact Groups	4-12
Continuous Shoot	6-12

Cookies	15-21, 15-22
Copy (text).....	3-13
Copy Text (Internet).....	15-19
Cost Units	2-15
Countdown Timer	12-25
Country Codes	9-29
Create QR Code.....	12-22
Crop	7-11
Cursor.....	15-6
Custom Screens	9-9
Cut (images).....	8-12
Cut (text).....	3-13

D

Data Folder.....	8-2
Date Format	9-18
Datum On/Off.....	10-16
Daylight Saving	9-18, 12-14
Default Image (Video Call)	5-6
Default View (Calendar)	12-2
Delete (Server Mail).....	14-22
Delete NG (Messaging)	14-16
Delete Posterior	3-14
Delivery Report.....	14-15, 14-19, 14-35
Desktop Holder.....	1-18
Details (Data Folder)	8-6
Details (Internet).....	15-20
Details (Media Player)	7-7
Details (Messaging) ..	14-18, 14-22, 14-30
Details (S! Applications)	16-5
Device Name	10-9

Dial New Number (Conference Call) ...	13-6
Dial Number (Display).....	9-5
Dialled Numbers.....	2-4, 2-13
Digital Zoom	6-4
Disable DTMF	2-12
Display Call Cost.....	9-30
Display Date & Time (External Display).....	9-13
Display Indicators (Photo Camera).....	6-15
Display indicators	1-9
Display Position	7-13
Display Saving.....	9-13
Display Settings	9-3
Display Size (streaming).....	15-13
Display Size (Video Camera).....	6-16
Display Size (Video Player)	7-10
Document Viewer	12-18
Download to.....	15-21
Downloads	15-20
DPOF	11-7
Drafts (Messaging).....	14-18
Duration (Calendar).....	12-5
Duration (External Display)	9-13
Duration (subtitles)	7-13
Duration (Tasks)	12-9

E

Earpiece Volume.....	2-11, 5-4, 9-17
E-Book.....	18-5
Edit Category.....	12-26
Emoticons.....	3-9

Enable DTMF.....	2-12
English	9-9
Enter URL.....	15-4, 15-14, 15-19
Entertainment	18-1
Event Light.....	9-16
Expenses Memo	12-25
Expiry Time (Messaging)	14-15, 14-36
Exposure (mobile camera)	6-16
Exposure (Video Call)	5-6
External Display.....	1-11
External Display Settings	9-13

F

Face Arrange (Picture Editor).....	8-14
Face Recognition.....	9-20
Familiar Usability.....	9-12
Fast forward (Media Player).....	7-6
Fast rewind (Media Player)	7-6
Feeling Mail.....	14-15, 14-20
FeliCa.....	17-2
File Format	8-16
File Size (Picture Editor).....	8-16
Fixed Dialling No. (Locks).....	9-26
Flash®	8-2
Flash® Restriction.....	15-22
Flash® Ringtones	8-2
Font Colour (subtitles).....	7-14
Font Size	3-15, 9-4
Font Size (E-Book)	18-7
Font Size (Internet).....	15-20
Font Size (subtitles)	7-13

Font Weight.....	9-4
For All Pictures (DPOF)	11-8
Format Card (Memory Card).....	11-4
Forward NG (Messaging).....	14-16
Frame (Picture Editor).....	8-16
Free Text (Picture Editor).....	8-14
Function List.....	20-2

G

Get Latest Contents (S! Cast)	18-3
Go to	12-6
Greeting Message	9-5
GSM	2-16

H

Handset Closed	1-11
Handset Code	1-27
Handset Open.....	1-11
Handset Security	9-20
Handsfree devices (connecting) ...	10-8
Handsfree Setting.....	10-9
Help (Internet).....	15-5
Help (mobile camera).....	6-4
Help (Video Call).....	5-6
Highlight.....	7-15
High-speed infrared	10-12
Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion.....	3-11
History (Internet)	15-4, 15-19, 15-20
Hold (Video Call).....	5-5
Hold (Voice Call)	2-11

Hold Guidance Pict	5-7
Hot Status	19-4
Hot Status Notification	19-5
Hot Status Notification List	19-12

I

IC Card	17-2
IC Card Lock	17-4
IC Card Status	17-4
Idle Screen Info.	14-20
In-Car Charger	1-19
Incoming calls (answering)	2-6, 5-3
Incoming Calls (Call Barring).....	13-8
Incoming Calls (Circle Talk)	19-18
Incoming calls (Video Call)	5-3
Incoming calls (Voice Call).....	2-6
Incoming Picture (Video Call)	5-6
Index Print.....	11-8
Information	2-7
Initialized Browser	15-21
Input Memory.....	15-8
Interface Settings	17-7
Internal Antenna.....	1-8
Internal Camera/External Camera ...	6-17
International calls.....	2-5
Internet Content	15-2
Int'l Calling	9-29
Int'l Prefix.....	9-29
IP Service Setting.....	9-26

J

Jump to Top/Bottom	15-5

K

Keep Auth Info	15-22
Key Assignments (text entry).....	3-3
Keypad Lock	1-22
Keypad Tones	9-16

L

Language	9-9
Last Played.....	7-6, 7-8, 15-14
Latest Information (Near Chat)....	19-20
Lifestyle-Appli.....	17-2
Light.....	14-20
Live Monitor	15-14
Location Info	10-15
Location Property.....	10-16
Look Up Word (E-Book)	18-8
Loudspeaker (Circle Talk).....	19-18
Loudspeaker (Video Call)	5-5, 5-7
Loudspeaker (Voice Call).....	2-11

M

Mail address (customising handset address)	14-5
Mailbox Volume	14-22
Main Menu.....	1-23
Manner Mode	2-18
Manual Update (Weather Indicator)	18-5
Manufacture Number.....	15-21
Mass Storage	11-9
Master Reset (handset settings) ...	9-28

Max Cost	2-15
Memory All Clear	16-8
Memory Card	11-2
Memory Status (Data Folder)	8-2
Memory Status (Memory Card)	11-7
Memory Status (Messaging).....	14-3
Memory Status (Phone Book)	4-8
Memory Status (S! Appli Library)	16-2
Memory Status (schedule).....	12-6
Memory Status (Tasks)	12-10
Merge Panorama (Picture Editor) ...	8-17
Message Centre.....	14-37
Message DL	14-37
Message List View.....	14-4
Message Notice	14-36
Message Notice (S! Applications)	16-8
Message Priority (S! Applications)	16-8
Messages (External Display).....	9-13
Messaging.....	14-2
Messaging (checking messages)	14-18, 14-23
Messaging (creating & sending messages)	14-7
Messaging (deleting messages)	14-29
Messaging (using attachments)	14-30
Messaging Settings.....	14-15
Microphone	1-8
Microphone (Video Camera).....	6-16
Minute Minder	9-30
Mirror Image.....	5-6
Missed Call Notification.....	13-5

Mobile camera	6-2
Mode Settings.....	9-2
Money Converter (Calculator).....	12-15
Move to Card (S! Applications).....	16-5
Multi Job	1-26
Multi Selector.....	ii
Music Player	7-4
Music Search	7-3
Mute.....	2-11, 5-4
Mute Microphone	5-7
My Details	1-21, 4-19
My Device Details (Bluetooth®)	10-9
My Folders	14-32
My Pictograms.....	8-2
My Status	19-8

N

Near Chat	19-19
Network (adding, editing & deleting).....	10-15
Network Info.....	10-15
Network Password	1-27, 13-10
Network S! Applications	16-2
Network Settings.....	10-14

O

Offline Mode	2-20
One Hiragana Predictive Entry	3-12
One Hiragana Word Call	3-12
One-Hiragana Conversion	3-11

Optional Predictive Functions (text entry)	3-13
Outgoing Calls (Call Barring)	13-8
Outgoing Picture (Video Call)	5-7
Out-of-range	1-9, 20-6

P

Packet Lock (Locks)	9-27
Packet transmission volume	2-14
Pager Code	3-9
Pager Code List	3-10
Paired Devices	10-4
Password Lock	9-25
Paste (Picture Editor)	8-14
Paste (text entry)	3-14
Payphone (Call Barring)	13-9
PC Site Browser	15-18
Permission	16-7
Phone Book	4-2
Phone Book (deleting entries)	4-11
Phone Book (editing)	4-10
Phone Book (quoting information) ...	3-14
Phone Book (saving)	4-3
Phone Book (searching)	4-9
Phone Book Lock	9-26
Phone Help	12-27
Phonetic Conversion	3-11
Photo Camera Mode	6-5
Pictogram List	20-16
Pictograms	3-8
Picture (Phone Book)	4-6

Picture Appearance (Messaging) ..	14-38
Picture Editor	8-12
Picture Quality (Photo Camera)	6-16
Picture Size (Photo Camera)	6-16
PIN	1-6, 9-24
PIN Entry	9-24
Play (Voice Memo)	2-12
Playback Pattern (Music Player)	7-7
Playback Pattern (Video Player)	7-10
Playlist (Media Player)	7-15
Pointer	15-5
Portrait/Macro Selector	1-8
Power Off Sound	9-17
Power On Sound	9-17
Power on/off	1-20
Predictive (conversion)	3-6
Previous Usage (conversion)	3-6
Priority (Messaging)	14-16
Properties (S! Applications)	16-3

Q

Quick Conversion	3-12
Quick Operations	1-25
Quiz (Messaging)	14-16

R

Received Calls	2-8, 2-13
Received MsView	14-4
Record Time (Voice Recorder)	12-16
Record Time/Size (Video Camera) ...	6-17
Rejected Numbers	13-9

Reload	15-19
Remote Forward	14-22
Remote FwAction	14-16
Remote Monitor	5-8
Repeat (Calendar)	12-6
Reply	14-25
Reply All	14-25
Reply Request	14-16
Reply To Settings	14-16, 14-37
Report (Face Recognition)	9-24
Request Reply	19-11
Reset (Mode Settings)	9-2
Reset (subtitles)	7-15
Reset All	9-28
Reset Learning	3-13
Reset Settings (DPOF)	11-8
Reset Settings (handset settings) ...	9-28
Reset Settings (S! Applications) ...	16-7
Resize (Picture Editor)	8-12
Restore	11-6
Retouch (Picture Editor)	8-13
Retrieve Mail List	14-22
Retrieve New Msg	14-19
Retrieve NW Info	1-20, 10-15
Ringer Output	9-17
Ringtone (Feeling Mail)	14-21
Ringtone/videos (Phone Settings) ...	9-14
Roaming	2-16
Root Certificates	15-22
Rotate	8-16

S		
S! Address Book.....	4-15	
S! Appli Library.....	16-2	
S! Appli Request.....	19-20	
S! Applications	16-2	
S! Applications (deleting)	16-5	
S! Applications (downloading).....	16-3	
S! Applications (exiting or pausing) ...	16-4	
S! Applications (resetting).....	16-8	
S! Applications (resuming).....	16-4	
S! Applications (starting).....	16-4	
S! Cast	18-2	
S! FeliCa	17-2	
S! Loop	19-3	
S! Mail.....	14-2	
S! Mail (retrieving remaining portion)	14-21	
S! Mail Settings.....	14-37	
S! Town.....	19-2	
Save Address (Messaging).....	14-27	
Save and Send.....	6-10	
Save Items.....	15-11	
Save Pictures to.....	6-18	
Save Recording To	12-17	
Save to Data Folder	14-30	
Save to Phone Book (Internet)	15-12	
Save to Phone Book (Messaging) ...	14-27	
Save Videos to.....	6-18	
Saved Pages	15-9	
Saved Pages (editing)	15-11	
Scan Barcode	12-19	
Scan Code (during text entry)	12-20	
Scan Text.....	12-24	
Scanned Results (Barcode).....	12-22	
Scene.....	6-16	
Screensaver	16-6	
Script Settings	15-22	
Scroll bar	15-6	
Scroll Unit	14-36, 15-20	
Scrolling	7-14	
SD Local Contents	11-7	
SD VIDEO	6-11	
Search	15-19	
Search for Devices	10-3	
Secret (Phone Book).....	4-7	
Secret (schedule)	12-6	
Secret (Tasks)	12-9	
Secret Folder (Messaging)	14-36	
Secure Area (opening secure page)	15-5	
Secure Prompt.....	15-22	
Security Codes	1-27	
Security Level (Face Recognition)....	9-24	
Security Settings (Internet)	15-21	
Select Network.....	10-14	
Self-timer.....	6-11	
Send All (Bluetooth®)	10-7	
Send All (Infrared)	10-13	
Send File Settings	14-38	
Send Referer	15-22	
Send Reservation	14-17	
Send URL	15-4, 15-20	
Sending Progress	14-34	
Sent Messages	14-2	
Sent MsView	14-4	
Server Mail Box	14-22	
Set as Ring Video.....	8-10	
Set as Ringtone	8-11	
Set as Wallpaper.....	8-10	
Set Auto Delete.....	14-16	
Set Auto Play File	14-17	
Set Colour	12-2	
Set Date/Time	9-18	
Set Frequency (S! Address Book) ...	4-18	
Set Holiday.....	12-3	
Set Low Priority	3-13	
Set Sent Cancel	14-27	
Set Sync Mode (S! Address Book) ...	4-18	
Set Time Zone.....	9-18, 12-14	
Set to Default (S! Applications)	16-8	
Set to Default (S! FeliCa)	17-8	
Set to Default (shortcuts)	1-24	
Settings (E-Book)	18-7	
Settings (S! Applications)	16-7	
Sharp Space Town	15-9	
Shortcuts	1-24	
Show Call Notice (S! Applications)...	16-8	
Show Indicators.....	9-5	
Show My Number	13-10	
Show Operator Name.....	9-5	
Show Secret Data.....	9-27	
Shutter Sound	6-15	

Side Keys	ii
Signature Settings (Messaging) ...	14-35
Simple Menu	2-21
Slide Show	8-6
Slides	14-23
Small Light	1-15
SMS.....	14-2
SMS Settings	14-36
Snooze (Alarm)	12-13
Soft Keys	1-23
Software Update	20-8
Sort (Data Folder)	8-4
Sort (Media Player)	7-6, 7-9
Sort (Messaging)	14-4
Sound Effects	7-7
Sounds & Alerts	9-14
Speed Dial List.....	4-13
Speed Mail.....	14-33
Split Picture	8-18
SSL	15-3
Stamp (Picture Editor)	8-14
Stamp (schedule).....	12-3
Standby	1-20
Standby Window.....	9-6, 19-9
Status Light.....	9-16
Status Setting	19-12
Stopwatch	12-24
Streaming.....	15-12
Subtitle (Video Player)	7-12
SVG files.....	8-7
Swap Calls	13-6

Switch Images	5-5
Switch to Read (Messaging).....	14-25
Switch to Unread (Messaging)	14-25
Symbols	3-8
Sync Settings (Phone Book)	4-17
Synchronisation (Phone Book)...	4-15, 4-18
Synchronisation (S! Applications)...	16-3
System Graphics	9-3
System Sounds	9-16

T

Tasks	12-8
Templates.....	14-14
Text Entry (Editing Characters).....	3-13
Text Entry (Entering Characters)	3-5
Text Orientation (E-Book)	18-7
Text Templates.....	3-15, 12-26
Time Format.....	9-18
Time Search	7-9
Totals	12-26
Touch Tones.....	2-11
Transfer Audio (Video Call)	5-5

U

Unavailable (Call Barring).....	13-9
Unknown (Call Barring)	13-9
Unsent Messages	14-2
Uploading Files.....	15-20
User Dictionary.....	9-19
USIM Card	1-4
USIM PINs	1-6

V

Via Infrared	10-12
Vibration (Alarm)	12-13
Vibration (Phone Settings)	9-15
Vibration (S! Applications)	16-8
Vibration Pattern	14-20
Video Call	5-2
Video Call (answering with voice only)	5-3
Video Call Settings.....	5-6
Video Camera Mode	6-8
Video Encode	6-17
Video Quality (Video Camera).....	6-16
View Log (Phone Book)	4-19
Visibility	10-4
Voice Memo.....	2-12
Voice Recorder	12-16
Voicemail.....	13-4
Volume (Answer Phone)	2-10
Volume (Earpiece Volume) ...	2-11, 5-4, 9-17
Volume (handset functions)	9-14
Volume (Media Player)	7-6

W

Wallpaper	9-3
Warning Message.....	15-21
Warning Tone.....	9-17
Weather Indicator	18-4
Web Access (Custom Screen)	9-11
Web Link Setting	7-10

Withheld (Call Barring) 13-9

World Clock..... 12-14

Y

Yahoo! Keitai 15-2

Yahoo! Keitai (accessing) 15-3

Warranty & After-Sales Services

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- **Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.**
- **Read through contents and keep in a safe place.**
- **The warranty term is described in the warranty.**

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.20-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.20-29**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- **Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.**
- **Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.**

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.20-29**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

Note ►

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centres

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157** for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank International Call Centre

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges will apply.)

■ Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Centre	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113

SoftBank 812SH/813SH Instruction Manual

March 2007, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

Model: SoftBank 812SH

813SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.